

# FortiSwitch Devices Managed by FortiOS 7.0

FortiSwitch 7.0.8



**FORTINET DOCUMENT LIBRARY**

<https://docs.fortinet.com>

**FORTINET VIDEO GUIDE**

<https://video.fortinet.com>

**FORTINET BLOG**

<https://blog.fortinet.com>

**CUSTOMER SERVICE & SUPPORT**

<https://support.fortinet.com>

**FORTINET TRAINING & CERTIFICATION PROGRAM**

<https://www.fortinet.com/training-certification>

**NSE INSTITUTE**

<https://training.fortinet.com>

**FORTIGUARD CENTER**

<https://www.fortiguard.com>

**END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT**

<https://www.fortinet.com/doc/legal/EULA.pdf>

**FEEDBACK**

Email: [techdoc@fortinet.com](mailto:techdoc@fortinet.com)



February 15, 2023

FortiSwitch 7.0.8 FortiSwitch Devices Managed by FortiOS 7.0

11-708-847943-20230215

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Change log</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>What's new in FortiOS 7.0.8</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>11</b>
Supported models	11
Support of FortiLink features	12
Before you begin	12
<b>Special notices</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>FortiSwitch management</b>	<b>14</b>
Configuring FortiLink	14
1. Enabling the switch controller on the FortiGate unit	14
2. Configuring the FortiLink interface	15
3. Auto-discovery of the FortiSwitch ports	19
Deleting a FortiLink interface	20
Optional FortiLink configuration required before discovering and authorizing FortiSwitch units	21
Migrating the configuration of standalone FortiSwitch units	21
VLAN interface templates for FortiSwitch units	21
Automatic provisioning of FortiSwitch firmware upon authorization	25
Discovering	27
Authorizing	28
Preparing the FortiSwitch unit	28
Optional FortiLink configuration	28
Using the FortiSwitch serial number for automatic name resolution	28
Changing the admin password on the FortiGate for all managed FortiSwitch units	29
Using automatic network detection and configuration	30
Limiting the number of parallel processes for FortiSwitch configuration	30
Configuring access to management and internal interfaces	30
Enabling FortiLink VLAN optimization	31
Configuring the MAC sync interval	31
Configuring the FortiSwitch management port	32
Multiple FortiLink interfaces	32
Grouping FortiSwitch units	33
Disabling stacking	38
<b>Determining the network topology</b>	<b>39</b>
Single FortiGate managing a single FortiSwitch unit	39
Single FortiGate unit managing a stack of several FortiSwitch units	40
HA-mode FortiGate units managing a single FortiSwitch unit	41
HA-mode FortiGate units managing a stack of several FortiSwitch units	42
HA-mode FortiGate units managing a FortiSwitch two-tier topology	43
Single FortiGate unit managing multiple FortiSwitch units (using a hardware or software switch interface)	44
HA-mode FortiGate units using hardware-switch interfaces and STP	44
FortiLink over a point-to-point layer-2 network	45

FortiLink mode over a layer-3 network .....	46
In-band management .....	47
Out-of-band management .....	49
Other topologies .....	50
Limitations .....	50
Switch redundancy with MCLAG .....	50
Standalone FortiGate unit with dual-homed FortiSwitch access .....	51
HA-mode FortiGate units with dual-homed FortiSwitch access .....	52
HA-mode one-tier MCLAG .....	52
FortiLink with an HA cluster of four FortiGate units .....	53
HA-mode FortiGate units in different sites .....	55
Isolated LAN/WAN with multiple FortiLink interfaces .....	56
Three-tier FortiLink MCLAG configuration .....	57
Dual-homed servers connected to a pair of FortiSwitch units using an MCLAG .....	58
<b>MCLAG peer groups .....</b>	<b>60</b>
MCLAG requirements .....	60
Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG .....	60
Deploying MCLAG topologies .....	62
Dual-homed servers connected to a pair of FortiSwitch units using an MCLAG .....	63
Multi-tiered MCLAG with HA-mode FortiGate units .....	64
HA-mode FortiGate units in different sites .....	66
<b>Configuring FortiSwitch VLANs and ports .....</b>	<b>70</b>
Configuring VLANs .....	70
Creating VLANs .....	70
Viewing FortiSwitch VLANs .....	72
Changing the VLAN configuration mode .....	73
Configuring ports using the GUI .....	73
Configuring port speed and status .....	73
Configuring PoE .....	74
Enabling PoE on the port .....	74
Enabling PoE pre-standard detection .....	75
Resetting the PoE port .....	75
Displaying general PoE status .....	76
Adding 802.3ad link aggregation groups (trunks) .....	76
MCLAG trunks .....	77
Configuring FortiSwitch split ports (phy-mode) in FortiLink mode .....	79
Configuring split ports on a previously discovered FortiSwitch unit .....	80
Configuring split ports with a new FortiSwitch unit .....	80
Configuring forward error correction on switch ports .....	80
Configuring a split port on the FortiSwitch unit .....	81
Restricting the type of frames allowed through IEEE 802.1Q ports .....	83
Multitenancy and VDOMs .....	83
FortiSwitch ports dedicated to VDOMs .....	83
FortiSwitch VLANs from different VDOMs sharing the same FortiSwitch ports .....	86
<b>Configuring switching features .....</b>	<b>87</b>
Configuring DHCP blocking, STP, and loop guard on managed FortiSwitch ports .....	87
Configuring edge ports .....	88

Configuring loop guard .....	89
Configuring STP settings .....	89
Configuring STP on FortiSwitch ports .....	90
Configuring STP root guard .....	92
Configuring STP BPDU guard .....	93
Configuring interoperation with per-VLAN RSTP .....	94
Dynamic MAC address learning .....	95
Limiting the number of learned MAC addresses on a FortiSwitch interface .....	96
Controlling how long learned MAC addresses are saved .....	97
Logging violations of the MAC address learning limit .....	97
Persistent (sticky) MAC addresses .....	98
Logging changes to MAC addresses .....	98
Configuring storm control .....	99
Configuring IGMP-snooping settings .....	100
Configuring global IGMP-snooping settings .....	100
Configuring IGMP-snooping settings on a switch .....	100
Configuring the IGMP-snooping proxy .....	101
Configuring the IGMP-snooping querier .....	102
Configuring PTP transparent-clock mode .....	103
<b>Device detection .....</b>	<b>105</b>
Enabling network-assisted device detection .....	105
Voice device detection .....	105
Configuring IoT detection .....	112
Configuring LLDP-MED settings .....	113
Creating LLDP asset tags for each managed FortiSwitch .....	115
Adding media endpoint discovery (MED) to an LLDP configuration .....	116
Displaying LLDP information .....	116
Configuring the LLDP settings .....	117
<b>FortiSwitch security .....</b>	<b>119</b>
FortiSwitch network access control .....	119
Summary of the procedure .....	119
Defining a FortiSwitch NAC VLAN .....	119
Configuring the FortiSwitch NAC settings .....	121
Defining a FortiSwitch NAC policy .....	123
Viewing the devices that match the NAC policy .....	129
Example of using LAN segments with NAC .....	129
Using the FortiSwitch NAC VLAN widget .....	134
Configuring dynamic port policy rules .....	135
Set the access mode and port policy for the port .....	136
Set the FortiLink policy settings to the FortiLink interface .....	136
Create the FortiLink policy settings .....	136
Create the dynamic port policy rule .....	137
Set how often the dynamic port policy engine runs .....	139
FortiSwitch security policies .....	139
Number of devices supported per port for 802.1x MAC-based authentication .....	140
Configuring the 802.1x settings for a virtual domain .....	140
Overriding the virtual domain settings .....	141

Defining an 802.1x security policy .....	142
Applying an 802.1x security policy to a FortiSwitch port .....	143
Testing 802.1x authentication with monitor mode .....	144
RADIUS accounting support .....	144
RADIUS change of authorization (CoA) support .....	145
802.1x authentication deployment example .....	147
Detailed deployment notes .....	149
Configuring the DHCP trust setting .....	150
Configuring the DHCP server access list .....	150
Configuring dynamic ARP inspection (DAI) .....	152
Configuring IPv4 source guard .....	153
Enabling IPv4 source guard .....	153
Creating static entries .....	154
Checking the IPv4 source-guard entries .....	155
Security Fabric showing .....	155
Blocking intra-VLAN traffic .....	156
Quarantines .....	157
Quarantining MAC addresses .....	158
Using quarantine with DHCP .....	161
Using quarantine with 802.1x MAC-based authentication .....	161
Viewing quarantine entries .....	163
Releasing MAC addresses from quarantine .....	166
<b>Optimizing the FortiSwitch network .....</b>	<b>168</b>
<b>Configuring QoS with managed FortiSwitch units .....</b>	<b>170</b>
Configuring ECN for managed FortiSwitch devices .....	172
<b>Logging and monitoring .....</b>	<b>173</b>
FortiSwitch log settings .....	173
Exporting logs to FortiGate .....	173
Sending logs to a remote Syslog server .....	174
Configuring FortiSwitch port mirroring .....	174
Configuring SNMP .....	177
Configuring SNMP globally .....	177
Configuring SNMP locally .....	179
SNMP OIDs .....	181
Configuring sFlow .....	182
Configuring flow tracking and export .....	183
Configuring flow control and ingress pause metering .....	185
<b>Operation and maintenance .....</b>	<b>187</b>
Discovering, authorizing, and deauthorizing FortiSwitch units .....	187
Editing a managed FortiSwitch unit .....	187
Adding preauthorized FortiSwitch units .....	188
Authorizing the FortiSwitch unit .....	188
Deauthorizing FortiSwitch units .....	188
Converting to FortiSwitch standalone mode .....	189
Managed FortiSwitch display .....	189
Cloud icon indicates that the FortiSwitch unit is managed over layer 3 .....	190

---

Re-ordering FortiSwitch units in the Topology view .....	191
Diagnostics and tools .....	193
Making the LEDs blink .....	195
Running the cable test .....	195
FortiSwitch ports display .....	196
FortiSwitch per-port device visibility .....	196
Managing DSL transceivers (FN-TRAN-DSL) .....	197
Displaying, resetting, and restoring port statistics .....	199
Network interface display .....	200
Data statistics .....	200
Sample topology .....	201
Synchronizing the FortiGate unit with the managed FortiSwitch units .....	202
Viewing and upgrading the FortiSwitch firmware version .....	202
Canceling pending or downloading FortiSwitch upgrades .....	203
Registering FortiSwitch to FortiCloud .....	203
Replacing a managed FortiSwitch unit .....	206
Executing custom FortiSwitch scripts .....	212
Creating a custom script .....	212
Executing a custom script once .....	212
Binding a custom script to a managed switch .....	212
Resetting PoE-enabled ports .....	213

## Change log

Date	Change Description
October 13, 2022	Initial document release for FortiOS 7.0.8
October 25, 2022	Updated the CLI commands for configuring a firewall policy for SNMP polling.
December 21, 2022	Updated the “Tier-2 and Tier-3 MCLAGs” section.
February 15, 2023	Updated the table in the “3. Auto-discovery of the FortiSwitch ports” section.



## What's new in FortiOS 7.0.8

The following list contains new managed FortiSwitch features added in FortiOS 7.0.8.

- The commands for flooding IGMP reports and flooding multicast traffic on a specified managed switch interface have changed from:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
  config ports
    edit <port_name>
      set igmps-flood-reports {disable | enable}
      set igmps-flood-traffic {disable | enable}
    next
  end
```

to:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
  config ports
    edit <port_name>
      set igmp-snooping-flood-reports {disable | enable}
      set mcast-snooping-flood-traffic {disable | enable}
    next
  end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
  config ports
    edit port3
      set igmp-snooping-flood-reports enable
      set mcast-snooping-flood-traffic enable
    next
  end
```

- A new test has been added to the FortiSwitch recommendations in the *Security Fabric > Security Rating* page to help optimize your network. The test checks the FortiSwitchOS version on the managed switches. If the FortiSwitchOS version is 7.0.0 or higher, FortiOS recommends using the strict tunnel mode, which enforces the use of strong encryption. If the managed switches are running an older firmware version, FortiOS recommends upgrading to FortiSwitchOS 7.0.0 or higher.

### To set the tunnel mode to strict in FortiOS:

```
config switch-controller system
  set tunnel-mode strict
end
```

- You can now use the FortiOS CLI to specify how often the managed FortiSwitch unit will send IGMP version-2 queries when the IGMP-snooping querier is configured:

```
config switch-controller igmp-snooping
  set query-interval <10-1200>
end
```

By default, queries are sent every 125 seconds. The value for `aging-time` must be greater than the value for `query-interval`.

- You can now add software switch interfaces for the incoming and outgoing interfaces when you create a new IPv4 or IPv6 multicast policy by going to *Policy & Objects > Multicast Policy* and clicking *Create New*. The members must belong to an explicit intra-switch-policy switch interface.
- The FG-180xF and FG-260xF models can now manage 196 FortiSwitch units.

# Introduction

This section provides information about how to set up and configure managed FortiSwitch units using the FortiGate unit (termed “using FortiSwitch in FortiLink mode”).

**NOTE:** FortiLink is not supported in transparent mode.

The maximum number of supported FortiSwitch units depends on the FortiGate model:

FortiGate Model Range	Number of FortiSwitch Units Supported
FortiGate 40F, FortiGate-VM01,	8
FortiGate 60F, 6xE, 80F, 8xE, 90E, 91E	16
FortiGate 100D, FortiGate-VM02	24
FortiGate 100E, 100EF, 100F, 101E, 140E, 140E-POE	32
FortiGate 200E, 201E	64
FortiGate 300D to 500D	48
FortiGate 300E to 500E	72
FortiGate 600D to 900D and FortiGate-VM04	64
FortiGate 600E to 900E	96
FortiGate 1000D to 15xxD	128
FortiGate 1100E to 26xxF	196
FortiGate-3xxx and up and FortiGate-VM08 and up	300

## Supported models

Refer to the [FortiLink Compatibility table](#) to find which FortiSwitchOS versions support which FortiOS versions.



New models (NPI releases) might not support FortiLink. Contact [Customer Service & Support](#) to check support for FortiLink.

## Support of FortiLink features

Refer to the [FortiSwitchOS feature matrix](#) for details about the FortiLink features supported by each FortiSwitch model.

## Before you begin

Before you configure the managed FortiSwitch unit, the following assumptions have been made in the writing of this manual:

- You have completed the initial configuration of the FortiSwitch unit, as outlined in the QuickStart Guide for your FortiSwitch model, and you have administrative access to the FortiSwitch GUI and CLI.
- You have installed a FortiGate unit on your network and have administrative access to the FortiGate GUI and CLI.

## Special notices

There is an additional command available only on the FG-92D model:

```
config system global
    set hw-switch-ether-filter {enable | disable}
end
```

By default, the `hw-switch-ether-filter` command is enabled. When the command is enabled:

- ARP (0x0806), IPv4 (0x0800), and VLAN (0x8100) packets are allowed.
- BPDUs are dropped, and no STP loop results.
- PPPoE packets are dropped.
- IPv6 packets are dropped.
- FortiSwitch devices are not discovered.
- HA might fail to form depending on the network topology.

When the `hw-switch-ether-filter` command is disabled, all packet types are allowed, but, depending on the network topology, an STP loop might result.

### To work around this issue:

1. Use either WAN1 or WAN2 as the HA heartbeat device.
2. Disable the `hw-switch-ether-filter` option.

# FortiSwitch management

This section contains information about the FortiSwitch and FortiGate ports that you connect to establish a FortiLink connection.

In FortiSwitchOS 3.3.0 and later releases, you can use any of the switch ports for FortiLink. Some or all of the switch ports (depending on the model) support auto-discovery of the FortiLink ports.

You can choose to connect a single FortiLink port or multiple FortiLink ports as a logical interface (link-aggregation group, hardware switch, or software switch).

**NOTE:** FortiSwitch units, when used in FortiLink mode, support only the default administrative access HTTPS port (443).

This section covers the following topics:

- [Configuring FortiLink on page 14](#)
- [Optional FortiLink configuration required before discovering and authorizing FortiSwitch units on page 21](#)
- [Discovering on page 27](#)
- [Optional FortiLink configuration on page 28](#)
- [Disabling stacking on page 38](#)



Use the FortiGate GUI or CLI to configure the FortiSwitch units unless this manual specifically says to directly configure the FortiSwitch units. If you make configuration changes directly on the FortiSwitch units, the FortiGate device will not be aware of the changes, resulting in missing configurations when the FortiSwitch units are restarted.

---

## Configuring FortiLink



You need to physically connect the FortiSwitch unit to the FortiGate unit only *after* completing this section. Some settings are only possible when the FortiGate unit has not authorized any switches.

---

To configure FortiLink:

1. [Enabling the switch controller on the FortiGate unit on page 14](#)
2. [Configuring the FortiLink interface on page 15](#)
3. [Auto-discovery of the FortiSwitch ports on page 19](#)

### 1. Enabling the switch controller on the FortiGate unit

Before connecting the FortiSwitch and FortiGate units, ensure that the switch controller feature is enabled on the FortiGate unit with the FortiGate GUI or CLI to enable the switch controller. Depending on the FortiGate model and software release, this feature might be enabled by default.

### Using the FortiGate GUI

1. Go to *System > Feature Visibility*.
2. Turn on the *Switch Controller* feature, which is in the *Core Features* list.
3. Select *Apply*.

The menu option *WiFi & Switch Controller* now appears.

### Using the FortiGate CLI

Use the following commands to enable the switch controller:

```
config system global
    set switch-controller enable
end
```

## 2. Configuring the FortiLink interface

The FortiLink interface is created automatically as an aggregate interface type; if the FortiGate model does not support the aggregate interface type, the FortiLink interface is created automatically as a hardware switch. Fortinet recommends keeping the default type of the FortiLink; however, if a physical interface or soft-switch interface type is required, the interface must be enabled for FortiLink using the FortiOS CLI, and then the default FortiLink interface can be deleted.

The FortiLink interface type is dependent on the network topology to be deployed. See [Determining the network topology on page 39](#).

### Using the FortiGate GUI

This section describes how to configure a FortiLink between a FortiSwitch unit and a FortiGate unit.

You can configure FortiLink using the FortiGate GUI or CLI. Fortinet recommends using the GUI because the CLI procedures are more complex (and therefore more prone to error).

If you use one of the auto-discovery FortiSwitch ports, you can establish the FortiLink connection with no configuration steps on the FortiSwitch and with a few simple configuration steps on the FortiGate unit.

### Configure the FortiLink interface

**To configure the FortiLink interface on the FortiGate unit:**

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiLink Interface*.
2. Select + in the Interface members field and then select the ports to add to the FortiLink interface.  
**NOTE:** If you do not see any ports listed in the Select Entries pane, go to *Network > Interfaces*, right-click the FortiLink physical port, select *Edit*, delete the port from the Interface Members field, and then select *OK*.
3. Configure the *IP/Network Mask* for your network.
4. Select *Automatically authorize devices*.
5. Select *Apply*.

## FortiLink split interface

You can use the FortiLink split interface to connect the FortiLink aggregate interface from one FortiGate unit to two FortiSwitch units. When the FortiLink split interface is enabled, only one link remains active.

The aggregate interface for this configuration must contain exactly two physical ports (one for each FortiSwitch unit).

The FortiLink split interface is enabled by default. You can configure this feature with the FortiGate GUI and CLI.

**NOTE:** The FortiLink split interface is required before enabling MCLAG. See [MCLAG peer groups on page 60](#).

### Using the FortiGate GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiLink Interface*.
2. Move the *FortiLink split interface* slider

### Using the FortiGate CLI:

```
config system interface
  edit <name of the FortiLink interface>
    set fortilink-split-interface {enable | disable}
  end
```

## Using the FortiGate CLI

This section describes how to configure FortiLink using the FortiGate CLI. Fortinet recommends using the FortiGate GUI because the CLI procedures are more complex (and therefore more prone to error).

If you use one of the auto-discovery FortiSwitch ports, you can establish the FortiLink connection (single port or LAG) with no configuration steps on the FortiSwitch and with a few simple configuration steps on the FortiGate unit.

You can also configure FortiLink mode over a layer-3 network.

## Summary of the procedure

1. On the FortiGate unit, configure the FortiLink interface.
2. Authorize the managed FortiSwitch unit manually if you did not select *Automatically authorize devices*.

For example, if the IP address, members, and automatic FortiSwitch authorization are enabled:

```
config system interface
  edit "fortilink"
    set ip 172.16.16.254 255.255.255.0
    set member "port9" "port10"
    set auto-auth-extension-device enable
  next
end
```

If required, remove a physical port from the lan interface:

```
config system virtual-switch
  edit lan
    config port
      delete port1
    end
  end
end
```



## 2.1 Custom FortiLink interfaces

### Choosing the FortiGate ports

The FortiLink can consist of a single (physical) or multiple ports (802.3ad aggregate, hardware switch, or software switch).

FortiLink is supported on all Ethernet ports except HA and MGMT.

If the default FortiLink interface was removed, on the FortiGate GUI, edit the interface and select *Dedicated to FortiSwitch*. Optionally, set the IP address and enable auto-authorization. Disable the split-interface if the interface is the aggregate type and is connecting all members to the same FortiSwitch unit.

**NOTE:** The FortiLink interface type is dependent upon the network topology to be deployed. See [Determining the network topology on page 39](#).

### Configure FortiLink on a physical port

Configure FortiLink on any physical port on the FortiGate unit and authorize the FortiSwitch unit as a managed switch.

In the following steps, port1 is configured as the FortiLink port.

1. Configure port1 as the FortiLink interface with the customer IP address and automatic authorization:

```
config system interface
  edit "port1"
    set fortilink enable
    set ip 172.16.16.254 255.255.255.0
    set auto-auth-extension-device enable
  next
end
```

If required, remove port1 from the lan interface:

```
config system virtual-switch
  edit lan
    config port
      delete port1
    end
  end
end
```

2. (Optional) Configure an NTP server on port1:

```
config system ntp
  set server-mode enable
  set interface port1
end
```

3. If automatic authorization is disabled, you need to manually authorize the FortiSwitch unit as a managed switch:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit FS224D3W14000370
    set fsw-wan1-admin enable
  end
```

end

4. The FortiSwitch unit will reboot when you issue the `set fsw-wan1-admin enable` command.

## Configure FortiLink on a logical interface

You can configure FortiLink on a logical interface: link-aggregation group (LAG), hardware switch, or software switch.

LAG is supported on all FortiSwitch models. Check the FortiGate feature matrix to check which models support the hardware switch and LAG (802.3ad aggregate) interfaces.

In the following procedure, port 4 and port 5 are configured as a FortiLink LAG.

### Using the GUI:

To configure the FortiLink interface on the FortiGate unit:

1. Go to *Network > Interfaces* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the interface (11 characters maximum).
3. For the type, select *802.3ad aggregate*.
4. Select + in the *Interface members* field and then select the ports to add to the FortiLink interface.  
**NOTE:** If you do not see any ports listed in the *Select Entries* pane, go to *Network > Interfaces*, edit the *lan* or *internal* interface, delete the port from the *Interface Members* field, and then click *OK*.
5. Configure the IP/Network Mask for your network.
6. Select *Automatically authorize devices*.
7. Click *Apply*.

If you want to add a third FortiLink interface, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiLink Interface* and click *Create new*.

### Using the CLI:

1. If required, remove the FortiLink ports from the `lan` interface:

```
config system virtual-switch
  edit lan
    config port
      delete port4
      delete port5
    end
  end
end
```

2. Create a trunk with the two ports that you connected to the switch:

```
config system interface
  edit flink1 (enter a name with a maximum of 11 characters)
    set ip 172.16.16.254 255.255.255.0
    set type aggregate
    set member port4 port5
    set fortilink enable
    (optional) set fortilink-split-interface disable
  next
end
```

**NOTE:** If the members of the aggregate interface connect to the same FortiSwitch unit, you must disable `fortilink-split-interface`.

### 3. Auto-discovery of the FortiSwitch ports

**NOTE:** For details on how to connect the FortiSwitch topology, see [Determining the network topology on page 39](#).

By default, each FortiSwitch model provides a set of ports that are enabled for FortiLink auto-discovery. If you connect the FortiLink using one of these ports, no switch configuration is required.

In FortiSwitchOS 3.4.0 and later releases, the last four ports are the default auto-discovery FortiLink ports. You can also run the `show switch interface` command on the FortiSwitch unit to see the ports that have auto-discovery enabled.

The following table lists the default auto-discovery ports for each switch model.

FortiSwitch Model	Default Auto-FortiLink ports
FS-108D-POE	port9–port10
FS-108E, FS-108E-POE, FS-108E-FPOE, FS-108F, FS-108F-POE, FS-108F-FPOE	port7–port10
FSR-112D-POE	port5–port12
FS-124D, FS-124D-POE	port23–port26
FSR-124D	port1–port4, port21–port28
FS-124E, FS-124E-POE, FS-124E-FPOE, FS-124F, FS-124F-POE, FS-124F-FPOE	port21–port28
FS-148E, FS-148E-POE	port21–port52
FS-148F, FS-148F-POE, FS-148F-FPOE	port48–port52
FS-224D-POE	port21–port24
FS-224D-FPOE	port21–port28
FS-224E, FS-224E-POE	port21–port28
FS-248D, FS-248D-FPOE	port45–port52
FS-248D-POE	port47–port50
FS-248E-POE, FS-248E-FPOE	port45–port52
FS-424D, FS-424D-POE, FS-424D-FPOE	port23–port26
FS-424E-Fiber	port1–port30
FS-426E-FPOE-MG	port23–port30
FS-448D, FS-448D-POE, FS-448D-FPOE	port45–port52
FS-524D, FS-524D-FPOE	port21–port30
FS-548D	port39–port54

FortiSwitch Model	Default Auto-FortiLink ports
FS-548D-FPOE, FS-548DN	port45–port54
FS-1024D	port1–port24
FS-1048D, FS-1048E	port1–port52
FS-1024E, FS-T1024E	port1–port26
FS-3032D, FS-3032E	port1–port32

**NOTE:** Any port can be used for FortiLink if it is manually configured.

You can use any of the switch ports for FortiLink. Before connecting the switch to the FortiGate unit, use the following FortiSwitch CLI commands to configure a port for FortiLink auto-discovery:

```
config switch interface
  edit <port>
    set auto-discovery-fortilink enable
  end
```

## Automatic inter-switch links (ISLs)

After a FortiSwitch unit is discovered and in FortiLink mode, all ports are enabled for FortiLink. Connect another FortiSwitch unit to any of the already discovered FortiSwitch ports, and the ISL is formed automatically, and the new unit is discovered by the FortiGate unit.

## Static ISL trunks

In some cases, you might want to manually create an ISL trunk, for example, for FortiLink mode over a point-to-point layer-2 network or for FortiLink mode over a layer-3 network. You can also enable or disable automatic VLAN configuration on the manually created (static) ISL trunk.

**To manually create an ISL trunk:**

```
config switch trunk
  edit "<trunk_name>"
    set static-isl enable
    set static-isl-auto-vlan {enable | disable}
  end
```

## Deleting a FortiLink interface

If you have any problems with deleting a FortiLink interface, disable it first using the CLI:

```
config switch interface
  edit <FortiLink_interface_name>
    set fortilink disable
  end
```

## Optional FortiLink configuration required before discovering and authorizing FortiSwitch units

This section covers the following topics:

- [Migrating the configuration of standalone FortiSwitch units on page 21](#)
- [VLAN interface templates for FortiSwitch units on page 21](#)
- [Automatic provisioning of FortiSwitch firmware upon authorization on page 25](#)

### Migrating the configuration of standalone FortiSwitch units

When a configured standalone FortiSwitch unit is converted to FortiLink mode, the standalone configuration is lost. To save time, use the `fortilinkify.py` utility to migrate your standalone configuration from one or more FortiSwitch units to a combined FortiGate-compatible configuration.

To get the script and instructions, go to:

<https://fdn.fortinet.net/index.php?/tools/file/68-fortiswitch-configuration-migration-tool/>

### VLAN interface templates for FortiSwitch units

**NOTE:** You can only create VLAN interface templates when the FortiGate device has not authorized any FortiSwitch units yet, so only physically connect the FortiSwitch unit to the FortiGate device after completing this section.

You can create configuration templates that define the VLAN interfaces and are applied to new FortiSwitch devices when they are discovered and managed by the FortiGate device.

For each VDOM, you can create templates, and then assign those templates to the automatically created switch VLAN interfaces for six types of traffic. The network subnet that is reserved for the switch controller can also be customized.

To ensure that switch VLAN interface names are unique for each system, the following naming rules are used:

- root VDOM: The interface names are the same as the template names.
- other VDOMs: The interface name is created from the template name and the SNMP index of the interface. For example, if the template name is `quarantined` and the SNMP index is 29, the interface name is `quarantined.29`.

You can also customize the FortiLink management VLAN per FortiLink interface:

```
config system interface
    edit <fortilink interface>
        set fortilink enable
        set switch-controller-mgmt-vlan <integer>
    next
end
```

The management VLAN can be a number from 1 to 4094. the default value is 4094.

## Create VLAN interface templates

### To configure the VLAN interface templates:

```
config switch-controller initial-config template
    edit <template_name>
        set vlanid <integer>
        set ip <ip/netmask>
        set allowaccess {options}
        set auto-ip {enable | disable}
        set dhcp-server {enable | disable}
    next
end
```

<template_name>	The name, or part of the name, of the template.
vlanid <integer>	The unique VLAN ID for the type of traffic the template is assigned to (1-4094; the default is 4094)
ip <ip/netmask>	The IP address and subnet mask of the switch VLAN interface. This can only be configured when auto-ip is disabled.
allowaccess {options}	The permitted types of management access to this interface.
auto-ip {enable   disable}	When enabled, the switch-controller will pick an unused 24 bit subnet from the switch-controller-reserved-network (configured in config system global).
dhcp-server {enable   disable}	When enabled, the switch-controller will create a DHCP server for the switch VLAN interface

### To assign the templates to the specific traffic types:

```
config switch-controller initial-config vlans
    set default-vlan <template>
    set quarantine <template>
    set rspan <template>
    set voice <template>
    set video <template>
    set nac <template>
end
```

default-vlan <template>	Default VLAN assigned to all switch ports upon discovery.
quarantine <template>	VLAN for quarantined traffic.

rspan <template>	VLAN for RSPAN/ERSPAN mirrored traffic.
voice <template>	VLAN dedicated for voice devices.
video <template>	VLAN dedicated for video devices.
nac <template>	VLAN for NAC onboarding devices.

### To configure the network subnet that is reserved for the switch controller:

```
config system global
    set switch-controller-reserved-network <ip/netmask>
end
```

The default value is 169.254.0.0 255.255.0.0.

## Example

In this example, six templates are configured with different VLAN IDs. Except for the default template, all of them have DHCP server enabled. When a FortiSwitch is discovered, VLANs and the corresponding DHCP servers are automatically created.

### To configure six templates and apply them to VLAN traffic types:

```
config switch-controller initial-config template
    edit "default"
        set vlanid 1
        set auto-ip disable
    next
    edit "quarantine"
        set vlanid 4093
        set dhcp-server enable
    next
    edit "rspan"
        set vlanid 4092
        set dhcp-server enable
    next
    edit "voice"
        set vlanid 4091
        set dhcp-server enable
    next
    edit "video"
        set vlanid 4090
        set dhcp-server enable
    next
    edit "onboarding"
        set vlanid 4089
        set dhcp-server enable
    next
end
config switch-controller initial-config vlans
    set default-vlan "default"
    set quarantine "quarantine"
    set rspan "rspan"
    set voice "voice"
```

```
set video "video"
set nac "onboarding"
end
```

**To see the automatically created VLANs and DHCP servers:**

```
show system interface
edit "default"
set vdom "root"
set snmp-index 24
set switch-controller-feature default-vlan
set interface "fortilink"
set vlanid 1
next
edit "quarantine"
set vdom "root"
set ip 169.254.11.1 255.255.255.0
set description "Quarantine VLAN"
set security-mode captive-portal
set replacemsg-override-group "auth-intf-quarantine"
set device-identification enable
set snmp-index 25
set switch-controller-access-vlan enable
set switch-controller-feature quarantine
set color 6
set interface "fortilink"
set vlanid 4093
next
...
end
show system dhcp server
edit 2
set dns-service local
set ntp-service local
set default-gateway 169.254.1.1
set netmask 255.255.255.0
set interface "fortilink"
config ip-range
edit 1
set start-ip 169.254.1.2
set end-ip 169.254.1.254
next
end
set vci-match enable
set vci-string "FortiSwitch" "FortiExtender"
next
edit 3
set dns-service default
set default-gateway 169.254.11.1
set netmask 255.255.255.0
set interface "quarantine"
config ip-range
edit 1
set start-ip 169.254.11.2
set end-ip 169.254.11.254
next
end
```



```

    set timezone-option default
  next
  ...
end

```

## Automatic provisioning of FortiSwitch firmware upon authorization

Starting in FortiOS 7.0.0, administrators can use the FortiOS CLI to upload the FortiSwitch firmware and then configure the managed FortiSwitch units to be automatically upgraded with the uploaded firmware when the switches were authorized by FortiLink. On FortiGate models that have a hard disk, up to four images for the same FortiSwitch model can be uploaded. For FortiGate models without a hard disk, only one image can be uploaded for each FortiSwitch model.

Starting in FortiOS 7.0.4, administrators no longer need to upload the FortiSwitch firmware. Instead, administrators can configure the managed FortiSwitch units to be automatically upgraded to the latest FortiSwitchOS version available in FortiGuard when the switches are authorized by FortiLink. If the FortiSwitch units are already running the latest version of FortiSwitchOS when they are authorized, no changes are made.



- You cannot use the one-time automatic upgrade with the automatic provisioning that uses uploaded firmware. When `firmware-provision-latest` is set to `once`, the `firmware-provision` and `firmware-provision-version` commands are unset.
- If a FortiSwitch unit is being upgraded when the one-time automatic upgrade is configured, the upgrade in progress is paused until the one-time automatic upgrade is completed.

### To configure the automatic provisioning using uploaded FortiSwitch firmware:

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    set firmware-provision {enable | disable}
    set firmware-provision-version <version>
  next
end

```

<code>firmware-provision</code> {enable   disable}	Enable or disable provisioning firmware to the FortiSwitch unit after authorization (the default is disable).
<code>firmware-provision-version</code> <version>	The firmware version to provision the FortiSwitch unit with on bootup. The format is major_version.minor_version.build_number, for example, 6.4.0454.

In the following example, a FortiSwitch 248E-POE is upgraded from FortiSwitchOS 6.4.3 to 6.4.4:

1. Upload the FortiSwitch image to the FortiGate device and confirm that it was uploaded successfully:

```

# execute switch-controller switch-software upload tftp 248-454.out 172.18.60.160

Downloading file 248-454.out from tftp server 172.18.60.160...
#####
Image checking ...
Image MD5 calculating ...
Image Saving S248EP-IMG.swtp ...
Successful!

```

File Syncing...

```
# execute switch-controller switch-software list-available
```

ImageName	ImageSize(B)	ImageInfo	Uploaded Time
S248EP-v6.4-build454-IMG.swtp	28579517	S248EP-v6.4-build454	Mon Nov 30 15:06:07 2020

## 2. On the FortiSwitch unit, check the current version:

```
# get system status
Version: FortiSwitch-248E-POE v6.4.3,build0452,201029 (GA)
Serial-Number: S248EPTF18001842
BIOS version: 04000004
System Part-Number: P22169-02
Burn in MAC: 70:4c:a5:e1:53:f6
Hostname: S248EPTF18001842
Distribution: International
Branch point: 452
System time: Wed Dec 31 16:11:17 1969
```

## 3. On the FortiSwitch unit, change the management mode to FortiLink:

```
config system global
    set switch-mgmt-mode fortilink
end
```

## 4. On the FortiGate device, enable firmware provisioning and specify the version:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S248EPTF18000000
        set firmware-provision enable
        set firmware-provision-version 6.4.0454
    next
end
```

## 5. On the FortiGate device, authorize the FortiSwitch unit:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S248EPTF18000000
        set fsw-wan1-peer flink
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
    next
end
```

## 6. When the authorized FortiSwitch unit is in FortiLink mode, it automatically starts upgrading to the provisioned firmware:

```
# execute switch-controller get-upgrade-status
```

Device	Running-version	Status	Next-boot
=====			
=====			
VDOM : vdom1			
FS1D243Z170000XX	FS1D24-v6.4.0-build456,201121 (Interim)	(0/0/0)	N/A (Idle)
S248DN3X170002XX	S248DN-v6.4.0-build456,201121 (Interim)	(0/0/0)	N/A (Idle)
<b>S248EPTF18000000</b>	<b>S248EP-v6.4.3-build452,201029 (GA)</b>	<b>(14/0/0)</b>	<b>N/A</b>
<b>(Upgrading)</b>			

## 7. Check the version when the upgrade is complete:

```
# execute switch-controller get-conn-status
Managed-devices in current vdom vdom1:
```

```
FortiLink interface : flink
SWITCH-ID      VERSION      STATUS      FLAG      ADDRESS      JOIN-TIME
NAME
FS1D243Z17000032 v6.4.0 (456) Authorized/Up - 169.254.1.3 Mon Nov 30
11:08:10 2020 -
S248DN3X170002XX v6.4.0 (456) Authorized/Up - 169.254.1.4 Mon Nov 30
11:08:32 2020 -
S248EPTF18000000 v6.4.4 (454) Authorized/Up C 169.254.1.6 Mon Nov 30
15:20:53 2020 -
```

## To set up the one-time automatic upgrade of the FortiSwitch firmware:

### 1. On the FortiGate device, configure automatic provisioning:

```
config switch-controller global
    set firmware-provision-on-authorization enable
end
```

By default, the `set firmware-provision-latest` command is set to `disable` under `config switch-controller managed-switch` before the FortiSwitch unit is authorized by the FortiGate device.

### 2. On the FortiGate device, authorize the FortiSwitch unit.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
        set fsw-wan1-peer <FortiLink_interface_name>
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
    end
```

Authorizing the FortiSwitch unit changes the setting of the `set firmware-provision-latest` command to `once` under `config switch-controller managed-switch`.

3. When the status of the managed FortiSwitch unit is “Authorized/Up,” the FortiGate device downloads the latest supported version of FortiSwitchOS from FortiGuard and then upgrades the switch.
4. The setting of the `set firmware-provision-latest` command is changed to `disable` under `config switch-controller managed-switch`.



Instead of enabling `firmware-provision-on-authorization`, you can leave the command at its default setting (`set firmware-provision-on-authorization disable`) and change the setting of `firmware-provision-latest` to `once`.

## Discovering

This section covers the following topics:

- [Authorizing on page 28](#)
- [Preparing the FortiSwitch unit on page 28](#)

## Authorizing

If automatic authorization is disabled, you need to authorize the FortiSwitch unit as a managed switch:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit FS224D3W14000370
    set fsw-wan1-admin enable
  end
end
```

**NOTE:** After authorization, the FortiSwitch unit reboots in FortiLink mode.

## Preparing the FortiSwitch unit

If the FortiSwitch unit is in the factory default configuration, it is ready to be connected to the FortiGate device. If the FortiSwitch unit is not in the factory default configuration, log in to the FortiSwitch unit with the CLI and use the `execute factoryreset` command to reset the FortiSwitch unit to the factory defaults

## Optional FortiLink configuration

This section covers the following topics:

- [Using the FortiSwitch serial number for automatic name resolution on page 28](#)
- [Changing the admin password on the FortiGate for all managed FortiSwitch units on page 29](#)
- [Using automatic network detection and configuration on page 30](#)
- [Limiting the number of parallel processes for FortiSwitch configuration on page 30](#)
- [Configuring access to management and internal interfaces on page 30](#)
- [Enabling FortiLink VLAN optimization on page 31](#)
- [Configuring the MAC sync interval on page 31](#)
- [Configuring the FortiSwitch management port on page 32](#)
- [Multiple FortiLink interfaces on page 32](#)
- [Grouping FortiSwitch units on page 33](#)

## Using the FortiSwitch serial number for automatic name resolution

By default, you can check that FortiSwitch unit is accessible from the FortiGate unit with the `execute ping <FortiSwitch_IP_address>` command. If you want to use the FortiSwitch serial number instead of the FortiSwitch IP address, use the following commands:

```
config switch-controller global
  set sn-dns-resolution enable
end
```

**NOTE:** The `set sn-dns-resolution enable` configuration is enabled by default.

Then you can use the `execute ping <FortiSwitch_serial_number>.<domain_name>` command to check if the FortiSwitch unit is accessible from the FortiGate unit. For example:

```
FG100D3G15817028 (root) # execute ping S524DF4K15000024.fsw
```

```
PING S524DF4K15000024.fsw (123.456.7.8): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 123.456.7.8: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 123.456.7.8: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 123.456.7.8: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 123.456.7.8: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 123.456.7.8: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=0.0 ms
```

Optionally, you can omit the domain name (.fsw) from the command by setting the default DNS domain on the FortiGate unit.

```
config system dns
    set domain "fsw"
end
```

Now you can use the `execute ping <FortiSwitch_serial_number>` command to check if the FortiSwitch unit is accessible from the FortiGate unit. For example:

```
FG100D3G15817028 (root) # execute ping S524DF4K15000024
PING S524DF4K15000024.fsw (123.456.7.8): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 123.456.7.8: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 123.456.7.8: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 123.456.7.8: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 123.456.7.8: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 123.456.7.8: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=0.0 ms

--- S524DF4K15000024.fsw ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.0/0.0/0.0 ms
```

## Changing the admin password on the FortiGate for all managed FortiSwitch units

By default, each FortiSwitch has an admin account without a password. To replace the admin passwords for all FortiSwitch units managed by a FortiGate, use the following commands from the FortiGate CLI:

```
config switch-controller switch-profile
    edit default
        set login-passwd-override {enable | disable}
        set login-passwd <password>
    next
end
```

If you had already applied a profile with the override enabled and the password set and then decide to remove the admin password, you need to apply a profile with the override enabled and no password set; otherwise, your previously set password will remain in the FortiSwitch. For example:

```
config switch-controller switch-profile
    edit default
        set login-passwd-override enable
        unset login-passwd
    next
end
```

## Using automatic network detection and configuration

There are three commands that let you use automatic network detection and configuration.

To specify which policies can override the defaults for a specific ISL, ICL, or FortiLink interface:

```
config switch-controller auto-config custom
  edit <automatically configured FortiLink, ISL, or ICL interface name>
    config switch-binding
      edit "switch serial number"
        set policy "custom automatic-configuration policy"
      end
    end
```

To specify policies that are applied automatically for all ISL, ICL, and FortiLink interfaces:

```
config switch-controller auto-config default
  set fgt-policy <default FortiLink automatic-configuration policy>
  set isl-policy <default ISL automatic-configuration policy>
  set icl-policy <default ICL automatic-configuration policy>
end
```

**NOTE:** The ICL automatic-configuration policy requires FortiOS 6.2.0 or later.

To specify policy definitions that define the behavior on automatically configured interfaces:

```
config switch-controller auto-config policy
  edit <policy_name>
    set qos-policy <automatic-configuration QoS policy>
    set storm-control-policy <automatic-configuration storm-control policy>
    set poe-status {enable | disable}
    set igmp-snooping-flood-reports {enable | disable}
    set mcast-snooping-flood-traffic {enable | disable}
  end
```

## Limiting the number of parallel processes for FortiSwitch configuration

Use the following CLI commands to reduce the number of parallel processes that the switch controller uses for configuring FortiSwitch units:

```
config global
  config switch-controller system
    set parallel-process-override enable
    set parallel-process <1-300>
  end
end
```

## Configuring access to management and internal interfaces

The `set allowaccess` command configures access to all interfaces on a FortiSwitch unit. If you need to have different access to the FortiSwitch management interface and the FortiSwitch internal interface, you can set up a local-access security policy with the following commands:

```
config switch-controller security-policy local-access
  edit <policy_name>
    set mgmt-allowaccess {https | ping | ssh | snmp | http | telnet | radius-acct}
    set internal-allowaccess {https | ping | ssh | snmp | http | telnet | radius-acct}
  end
```

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    set access-profile <name_of_policy>
  end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller security-policy local-access
  edit policy1
    set mgmt-allowaccess https ping ssh radius-acct
    set internal-allowaccess https ssh snmp telnet
  end
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    set access-profile policy1
  end
```

**NOTE:** After you upgrade to FortiOS 6.2, the allowaccess settings for the FortiSwitch mgmt and internal interfaces are overridden by the default local-access security policy.

```
    set min-bundle <int>
    set max-bundle <int>
    set members <port1 port2 ...>
  next
end
end
end
```

## Enabling FortiLink VLAN optimization

When inter-switch links (ISLs) are automatically formed on trunks, the switch controller allows VLANs 1-4093 on ISL ports. This configuration can increase data processing on the FortiSwitch unit. When VLAN optimization is enabled, the FortiSwitch unit allows only user-defined VLANs on the automatically generated trunks.

**NOTE:** VLAN optimization is enabled by default.

**To enable FortiLink VLAN optimization on FortiSwitch units from the FortiGate unit:**

```
config switch-controller global
  set vlan-optimization enable
end
```

**NOTE:** You cannot use the `set vlan-all-mode all` command with the `set vlan-optimization enable` command.

## Configuring the MAC sync interval

Use the following commands to configure the global MAC sync interval.

The MAC sync interval is the time interval between MAC synchronizations. The range is 30 to 600 seconds, and the default value is 60.

```
config switch-controller mac-sync-settings
  set mac-sync-interval <30-600>
```

end

## Configuring the FortiSwitch management port

If the FortiSwitch model has a dedicated management port, you can configure remote management to the FortiSwitch. In FortiLink mode, the FortiGate is the default gateway, so you need to configure an explicit route for the FortiSwitch management port.

### Using the FortiGate GUI

1. Go to *Network > Static Routes > Create New > Route*.
2. Set *Destination* to *Subnet* and enter a subnetwork and mask.
3. Set *Device* to the management interface.
4. Add a *Gateway* IP address.

### Using the FortiSwitch CLI

Enter the following commands:

```
config router static
  edit 1
    set device mgmt
    set gateway <router IP address>
    set dst <router subnet> <subnet mask>
  end
end
```

In the following example, the FortiSwitch management port is connected to a router with IP address 192.168.0.10:

```
config router static
  edit 1
    set device mgmt
    set gateway 192.168.0.10
    set dst 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0
  end
end
```

If provisioned with custom commands on the FortiGate device, the configuration is preserved on the FortiGate device. See [Executing custom FortiSwitch scripts on page 212](#).

## Multiple FortiLink interfaces

If you are adding a second FortiLink interface, use the CLI to enable FortiLink. For example:

```
config system interface
  edit "fortilink_2"
    set fortilink enable
  next
end
```

After that, the interface is available in the GUI to complete the settings. Click *Create* to add additional FortiLink interfaces.



## Grouping FortiSwitch units

You can simplify the configuration and management of complex topologies by creating FortiSwitch groups. A group can include one or more FortiSwitch units and you can include different models in a group.

### Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Select *Create New > FortiSwitch Group*.
3. In the Name field, enter a name for the FortiSwitch group.
4. In the Members field, click + to select which switches to include in the FortiSwitch group.
5. In the Description field, enter a description of the FortiSwitch group.
6. Select *OK*.

### Using the CLI:

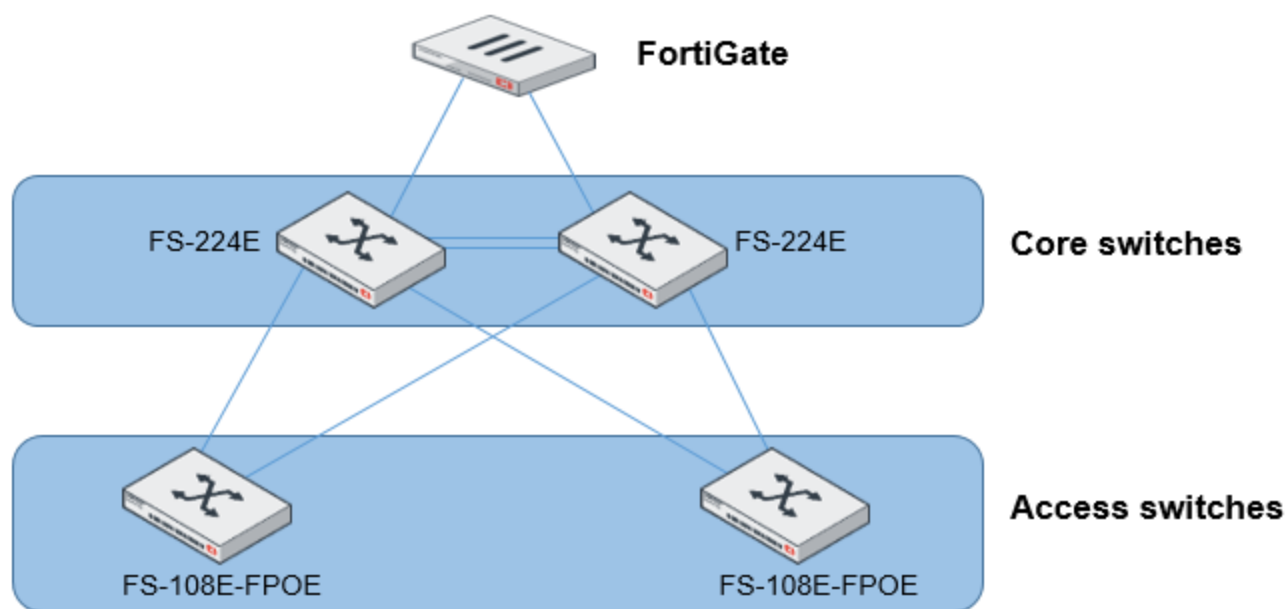
```
config switch-controller switch-group
  edit <name>
    set description <string>
    set members <serial-number> <serial-number> ...
  end
end
```

Grouping FortiSwitch units allows you to restart all of the switches in the group instead of individually. For example, you can use the following command to restart all of the FortiSwitch units in a group named `my-sw-group`:

```
execute switch-controller switch-action restart delay switch-group my-sw-group
```

Upgrading the firmware of FortiSwitch groups is easier, too, because fewer commands are needed. See the next section for the procedure.

## Firmware upgrade of stacked or tiered FortiSwitch units



In this topology, the core FortiSwitch units are model FS-224E, and the access FortiSwitch units are model FS-108E-FPOE. Because the switches are stacked or tiered, the procedure to update the firmware is simpler. The FortiGate unit is running FortiOS 6.2.2 GA. In the following procedure, the four FortiSwitch units are upgraded from 6.2.1 to 6.2.2.

### To upgrade the firmware of stacked or tiered FortiSwitch units:

1. Check that all of the FortiSwitch units are connected and which firmware versions they are running. For example:

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller get-conn-status
Managed-devices in current vdom root:
```

```
STACK-NAME: FortiSwitch-Stack-flink
SWITCH-ID      VERSION      STATUS      FLAG  ADDRESS      JOIN-TIME
NAME
S108EF5918003577 v6.2.1 (176) Authorized/Up - 10.105.22.6 Thu Oct 24
10:47:27 2019 -
S108EP5918008265 v6.2.1 (176) Authorized/Up - 10.105.22.5 Thu Oct 24
10:47:20 2019 -
S224ENTF18001408 v6.2.1 (176) Authorized/Up - 10.105.22.2 Thu Oct 24
10:44:36 2019 -
S224ENTF18001432 v6.2.1 (176) Authorized/Up - 10.105.22.3 Thu Oct 24
10:44:49 2019 -
```

```
Flags: C=config sync, U=upgrading, S=staged, D=delayed reboot pending, E=configuration
sync error
Managed-Switches: 4 (UP: 4 DOWN: 0)
```

2. (Optional) To speed up how fast the image is pushed from the FortiGate unit to the FortiSwitch units, enable the HTTPS image push instead of the CAPWAP image push. For example:

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # config switch-controller global
FGT81ETK19001274 (global) # set https-image-push enable
FGT81ETK19001274 (global) # end
```

**3. Download the file for the FortiSwitchOS 6.2.2 GA build 194 in the FortiGate unit. For example:**

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller switch-software upload tftp FSW_224E-v6-
build0194-FORTINET.out 10.105.16.15
```

```
Downloading file FSW_224E-v6-build0194-FORTINET.out from tftp server 10.105.16.15...
```

```
#####
```

```
Image checking ...
```

```
Image MD5 calculating ...
```

```
Image Saving S224EN-IMG.swtp ...
```

```
Successful!
```

```
File Syncing...
```

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller switch-software upload tftp FSW_108E_POE-
v6-build0194-FORTINET.out 10.105.16.15
```

```
Downloading file FSW_108E_POE-v6-build0194-FORTINET.out from tftp server 10.105.16.15...
```

```
#####
```

```
Image checking ...
```

```
Image MD5 calculating ...
```

```
Image Saving S108EP-IMG.swtp ...
```

```
Successful!
```

```
File Syncing...
```

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller switch-software upload tftp FSW_108E_FPOE-
v6-build0194-FORTINET.out 10.105.16.15
```

```
Downloading file FSW_108E_FPOE-v6-build0194-FORTINET.out from tftp server
10.105.16.15...
```

```
#####
```

```
Image checking ...
```

```
Image MD5 calculating ...
```

```
Image Saving S108EF-IMG.swtp ...
```

```
Successful!
```

```
File Syncing...
```

```
FGT81ETK19001274 #
```

**4. Check the downloaded FortiSwitch image. For example:**

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller switch-software list-available
```

ImageName	ImageSize (B)	ImageInfo	Uploaded Time
S108EF-IMG.swtp	19574769	S108EF-v6.2-build194	Thu Oct 24 13:03:51 2019
S108EP-IMG.swtp	19583362	S108EP-v6.2-build194	Thu Oct 24 13:03:23 2019
S224EN-IMG.swtp	27159659	S224EN-v6.2-build194	Thu Oct 24 13:03:02 2019

```
FGT81ETK19001274 #
```

**5. Start the image staging. For example:**

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller switch-software stage all S224EN-IMG.swtp
```

```
Staged Image Version S224EN-v6.2-build194
```

```
Image staging operation is started for FortiSwitch S224ENTF18001408 ...
```

```
Image staging operation is started for FortiSwitch S224ENTF18001432 ...
```

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller switch-software stage all S108EF-IMG.swtp
Staged Image Version S108EF-v6.2-build194
Image staging operation is started for FortiSwitch S108EF5918003577 ...
```

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller switch-software stage all S108EP-IMG.swtp
Staged Image Version S108EP-v6.2-build194
Image staging operation is started for FortiSwitch S108EP5918008265 ...
```

6. Check the status of the image staging. The *Status* column reports (from left to right) the percentage of the new firmware downloaded, the percentage of data erased to make space in the switch's local storage, and the percentage of the new firmware saved to the switch's local storage. For example:

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller get-upgrade-status
```

Device	Running-version	Status	Next-boot
=====			
===			
VDOM : root			
S224ENTF18001408	S224EN-v6.2.1-build176,190620 (GA)	(100/0/0)	S224EN-
v6.2-build176	(Staging)		
S224ENTF18001432	S224EN-v6.2.1-build176,190620 (GA)	(100/0/0)	S224EN-
v6.2-build176	(Staging)		
S108EP5918008265	S108EP-v6.2.1-build176,190620 (GA)	(18/0/0)	S108EP-v6.2-
build176	(Staging)		
S108EF5918003577	S108EF-v6.2.1-build176,190620 (GA)	(25/0/0)	S108EF-v6.2-
build176	(Staging)		

7. Verify that the image staging has completed. For example:

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller get-upgrade-status
```

Device	Running-version	Status	Next-boot
=====			
===			
VDOM : root			
S224ENTF18001408	S224EN-v6.2.1-build176,190620 (GA)	(0/100/100)	S224EN-
v6.2-build194	(Idle)		
S224ENTF18001432	S224EN-v6.2.1-build176,190620 (GA)	(0/100/100)	S224EN-
v6.2-build194	(Idle)		
S108EP5918008265	S108EP-v6.2.1-build176,190620 (GA)	(0/100/100)	S108EP-
v6.2-build194	(Idle)		
S108EF5918003577	S108EF-v6.2.1-build176,190620 (GA)	(0/100/100)	S108EF-
v6.2-build194	(Idle)		

8. Reboot all switches (or reboot the switches by group). For example:

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller switch-action restart delay all
Delayed restart operation is requested for FortiSwitch S224ENTF18001408 ...
Delayed restart operation is requested for FortiSwitch S224ENTF18001432 ...
Delayed restart operation is requested for FortiSwitch S108EP5918008265 ...
Delayed restart operation is requested for FortiSwitch S108EF5918003577 ...
```

9. Check the status of the switch reboot. For example:

```
FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller switch-action restart delay all
Delayed restart operation is requested for FortiSwitch S224ENTF18001408 ...
Delayed restart operation is requested for FortiSwitch S224ENTF18001432 ...
Delayed restart operation is requested for FortiSwitch S108EP5918008265 ...
```

Delayed restart operation is requested for FortiSwitch S108EF5918003577 ...

FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller get-upgrade-status

Device	Running-version	Status	Next-boot
--------	-----------------	--------	-----------

=====

VDOM : root

S224ENTF18001408 Prepping for delayed restart triggered ...

please wait for switch to reboot in a moment

S224ENTF18001432 Prepping for delayed restart triggered ...

please wait for switch to reboot in a moment

S108EP5918008265 Prepping for delayed restart triggered ...

please wait for switch to reboot in a moment

S108EF5918003577 Prepping for delayed restart triggered ...

please wait for switch to reboot in a moment

FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller get-conn-status

Managed-devices in current vdom root:

STACK-NAME: FortiSwitch-Stack-flink

SWITCH-ID	VERSION	STATUS	FLAG	ADDRESS	JOIN-TIME
-----------	---------	--------	------	---------	-----------

S108EF5918003577	v6.2.1 ()	Authorized/Down	D	0.0.0.0	N/A
------------------	-----------	-----------------	---	---------	-----

-

S108EP5918008265	v6.2.1 ()	Authorized/Down	D	0.0.0.0	N/A
------------------	-----------	-----------------	---	---------	-----

-

S224ENTF18001408	v6.2.1 ()	Authorized/Down	D	0.0.0.0	N/A
------------------	-----------	-----------------	---	---------	-----

-

S224ENTF18001432	v6.2.1 ()	Authorized/Down	D	0.0.0.0	N/A
------------------	-----------	-----------------	---	---------	-----

-

Flags: C=config sync, U=upgrading, S=staged, D=delayed reboot pending, E=configuration sync error

Managed-Switches: 4 (UP: 0 DOWN: 4)

FGT81ETK19001274 #

# 10. Wait for a while before checking that all switches are online. For example:

FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller get-upgrade-status

Device	Running-version	Status	Next-boot
--------	-----------------	--------	-----------

=====

VDOM : root

S224ENTF18001408	S224EN-v6.2.2-build194,191018 (GA)	(0/100/100)	S224EN-
------------------	------------------------------------	-------------	---------

v6.2-build194 (Idle)

S224ENTF18001432	S224EN-v6.2.2-build194,191018 (GA)	(0/100/100)	S224EN-
------------------	------------------------------------	-------------	---------

v6.2-build194 (Idle)

S108EP5918008265	S108EP-v6.2.2-build194,191018 (GA)	(0/100/100)	S108EP-
------------------	------------------------------------	-------------	---------

v6.2-build194 (Idle)

S108EF5918003577	S108EF-v6.2.2-build194,191018 (GA)	(0/100/100)	S108EF-
------------------	------------------------------------	-------------	---------

v6.2-build194 (Idle)

FGT81ETK19001274 # execute switch-controller get-conn-status

Managed-devices in current vdom root:

STACK-NAME: FortiSwitch-Stack-flink

SWITCH-ID	VERSION	STATUS	FLAG	ADDRESS	JOIN-TIME
NAME					
S108EF5918003577	v6.2.2 (194)	Authorized/Up	-	10.105.22.6	Thu Oct 24
13:22:27 2019	-				
S108EP5918008265	v6.2.2 (194)	Authorized/Up	-	10.105.22.5	Thu Oct 24
13:22:41 2019	-				
S224ENTF18001408	v6.2.2 (194)	Authorized/Up	-	10.105.22.2	Thu Oct 24
13:20:11 2019	-				
S224ENTF18001432	v6.2.2 (194)	Authorized/Up	-	10.105.22.3	Thu Oct 24
13:19:58 2019	-				

Flags: C=config sync, U=upgrading, S=staged, D=delayed reboot pending, E=configuration sync error

Managed-Switches: 4 (UP: 4 DOWN: 0)

FGT81ETK19001274 #

```
config switch-controller global
  append disable-discovery S012345678
  unselect disable-discovery S1234567890
end
```

## Disabling stacking

To disable stacking, execute the following commands from the FortiGate CLI. In the following example, port4 is the FortiLink interface:

```
config system interface
  edit port4
    set fortilink-stacking disable
  end
end
```

## Determining the network topology

The FortiGate unit requires an active FortiLink interface to manage all of the subtending FortiSwitch units (called *stacking*).

You can configure the FortiLink as a physical interface or as a logical interface (associated with one or more physical interfaces). Depending on the network topology, you can also configure a standby FortiLink.

**NOTE:** For any of the topologies:

- All of the managed FortiSwitch units will function as one Layer-2 stack where the FortiGate unit manages each FortiSwitch separately.
- The active FortiLink carries data as well as management traffic.

This section covers the following topics:

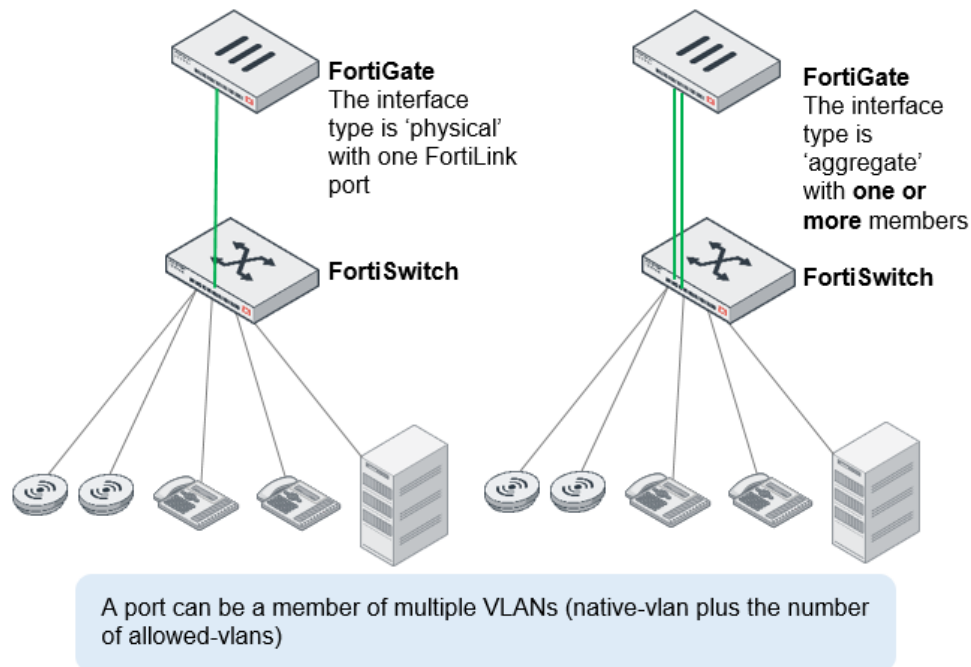
- [Single FortiGate managing a single FortiSwitch unit on page 39](#)
- [Single FortiGate unit managing a stack of several FortiSwitch units on page 40](#)
- [HA-mode FortiGate units managing a single FortiSwitch unit on page 41](#)
- [HA-mode FortiGate units managing a stack of several FortiSwitch units on page 42](#)
- [HA-mode FortiGate units managing a FortiSwitch two-tier topology on page 43](#)
- [Single FortiGate unit managing multiple FortiSwitch units \(using a hardware or software switch interface\) on page 44](#)
- [HA-mode FortiGate units using hardware-switch interfaces and STP on page 44](#)
- [FortiLink over a point-to-point layer-2 network on page 45](#)
- [FortiLink mode over a layer-3 network on page 46](#)
- [Switch redundancy with MCLAG on page 50](#)

## Single FortiGate managing a single FortiSwitch unit

On the FortiGate unit, the FortiLink interface is configured as a physical or aggregate interface. The 802.3ad aggregate interface type provides a logical grouping of one or more physical interfaces.

**NOTE:**

- For the aggregate interface, you must disable the split interface on the FortiGate unit.
- When you are using the aggregate interface on the FortiGate unit for the FortiLink interface, the `lACP-mode` of the FortiLink aggregate interface must be set to `static`. Unless MCLAG is enabled and you are using 6.2.0 or later, see [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG on page 60](#) for details.



## Single FortiGate unit managing a stack of several FortiSwitch units

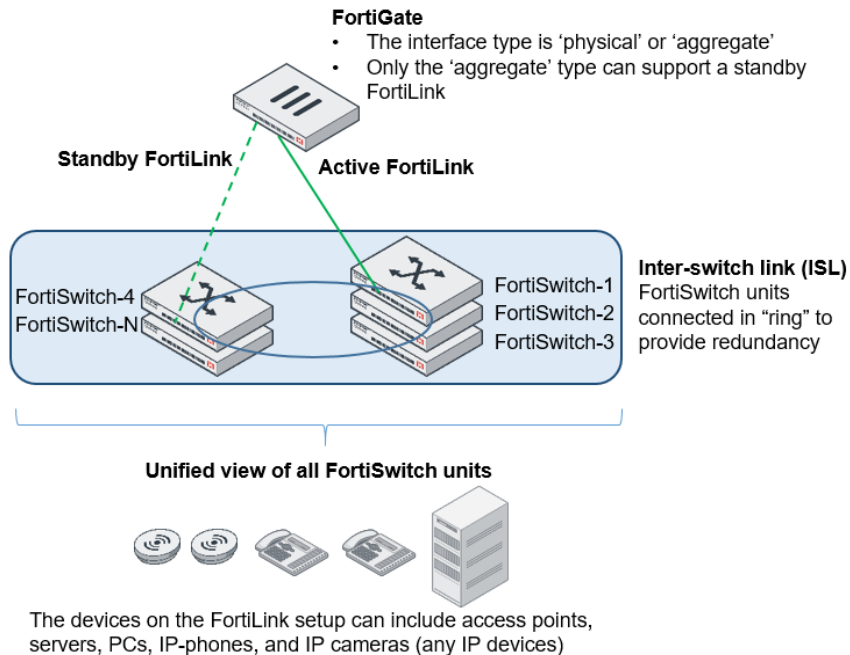
The FortiGate unit connects directly to one FortiSwitch unit using a physical or aggregate interface. The remaining FortiSwitch units connect in a ring using inter-switch links (that is, ISL).

Optionally, you can connect a standby FortiLink connection to the last FortiSwitch unit. For this configuration, you create a FortiLink Split-Interface (an aggregate interface that contains one active link and one standby link).

### NOTE:

- When you are using the aggregate interface on the FortiGate unit for the FortiLink interface, the `lACP-mode` of the FortiLink aggregate interface must be set to `static`. Unless MCLAG is enabled and you are using 6.2.0 or later, see [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG on page 60](#) for details.
- Do not create loops or rings with the FortiGate unit in the path.

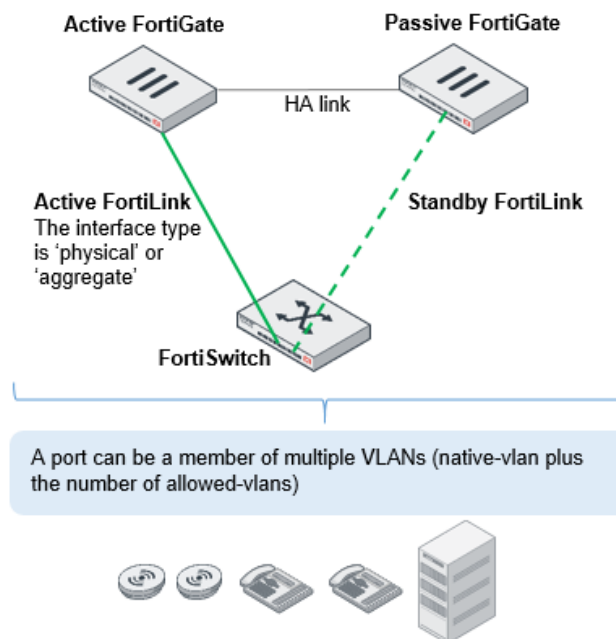




## HA-mode FortiGate units managing a single FortiSwitch unit

The master and slave FortiGate units both connect a FortiLink to the FortiSwitch unit. The FortiLink port(s) and interface type must match on the two FortiGate units.

**NOTE:** Before FortiOS 6.2.0, when using HA-mode FortiGate units to manage FortiSwitch units, the HA mode must be active-passive. Starting in FortiOS 6.2.0, the FortiGate HA mode can be either active-passive or active-active.



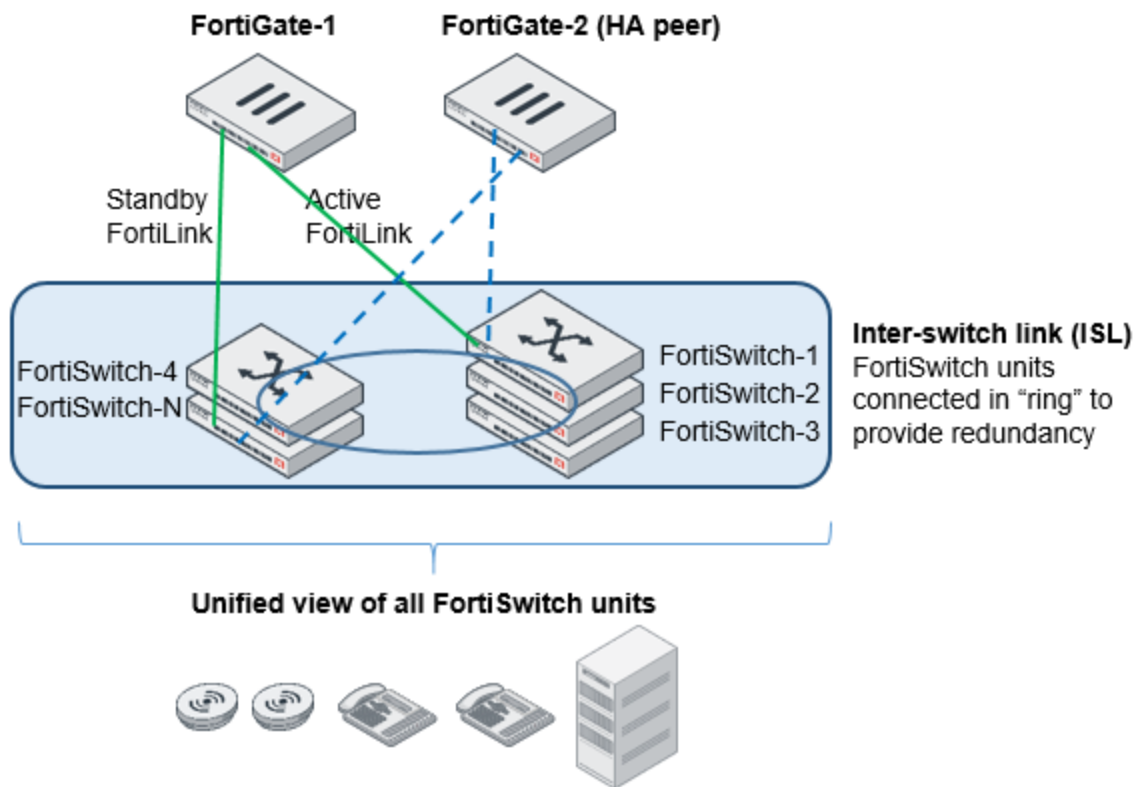
## HA-mode FortiGate units managing a stack of several FortiSwitch units

The master and slave FortiGate units both connect a FortiLink to the first FortiSwitch unit and (optionally) to the last FortiSwitch unit. The FortiLink ports and interface type must match on the two FortiGate units.

When using an aggregate interface for the active/standby FortiLink configuration, make sure the FortiLink split interface is enabled (this forces one link to be active and the rest to be standby links, which avoids loops in the network). This option can be disabled later if you enable an MCLAG. See [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG on page 60](#).

### NOTE:

- When you are using the aggregate interface on the FortiGate unit for the FortiLink interface, the `lACP-mode` of the FortiLink aggregate interface must be set to `static`. Unless MCLAG is enabled and you are using 6.2.0 or later, see [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG on page 60](#) for details.
- Before FortiOS 6.2.0, when using HA-mode FortiGate units to manage FortiSwitch units, the HA mode must be active-passive. Starting in FortiOS 6.2.0, the FortiGate HA mode can be either active-passive or active-active.

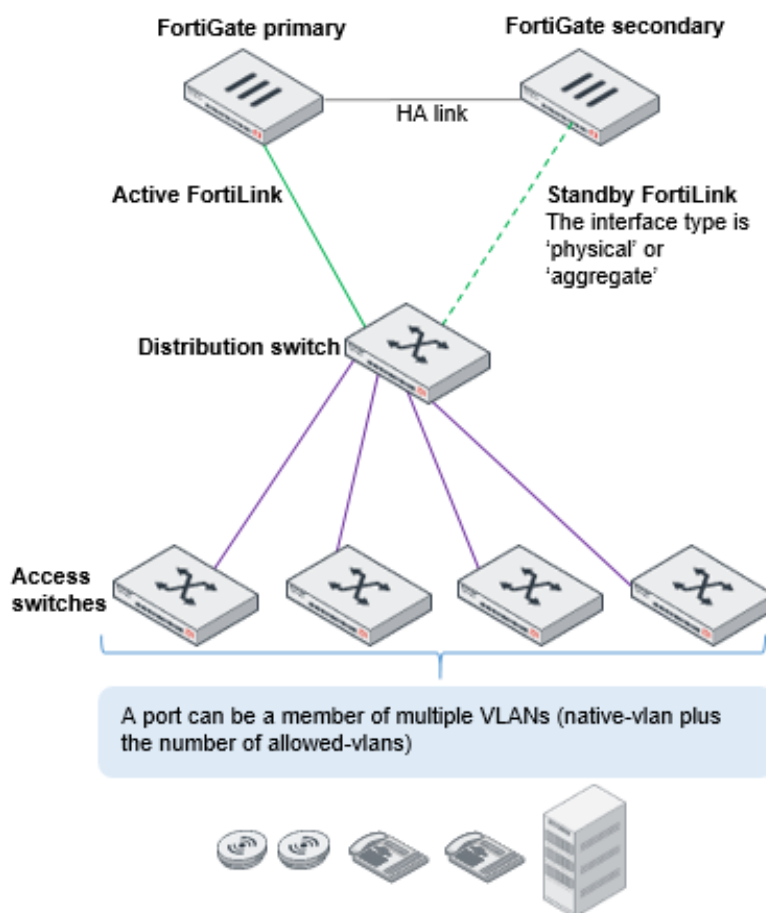


The devices on the FortiLink setup can include access points, servers, PCs, IP-phones, and IP cameras (any IP devices)

## HA-mode FortiGate units managing a FortiSwitch two-tier topology

The distribution FortiSwitch unit connects to the master and slave FortiGate units. The FortiLink port(s) and interface type must match on the two FortiGate units.

**NOTE:** Before FortiOS 6.2.0, when using HA-mode FortiGate units to manage FortiSwitch units, the HA mode must be active-passive. Starting in FortiOS 6.2.0, the FortiGate HA mode can be either active-passive or active-active.



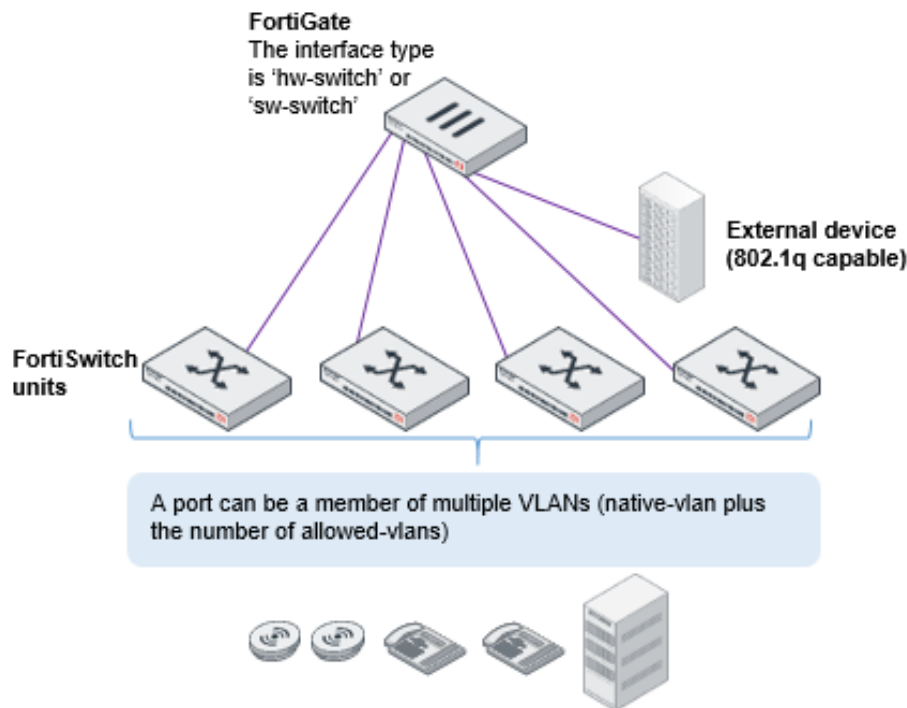
## Single FortiGate unit managing multiple FortiSwitch units (using a hardware or software switch interface)

The FortiGate unit connects directly to each FortiSwitch unit. Each of these FortiLink ports is added to the logical hardware-switch or software-switch interface on the FortiGate unit.

Optionally, you can connect other devices to the FortiGate logical interface. These devices, which must support IEEE 802.1q VLAN tagging, will have Layer 2 connectivity with the FortiSwitch ports.

### NOTE:

- Using the hardware or software switch interface in FortiLink mode is not recommended in most cases. It can be used when the traffic on the ports is very light because all traffic across the switches moves through the FortiGate unit.
- Do not create loops or rings in this topology.



## HA-mode FortiGate units using hardware-switch interfaces and STP

In most FortiLink topologies, MCLAG or LAG configurations are used for FortiSwitch redundancy. However, some FortiGate models do not support the FortiLink aggregate interface, or some FortiSwitch models do not support MCLAG.

The following network topology uses a hardware-switch interface on each FortiGate unit. Each FortiSwitch unit is connected to a single port of the hardware-switch interface of the FortiGate unit. The inter-switch link (ISL) between the FortiSwitch units provides redundancy.

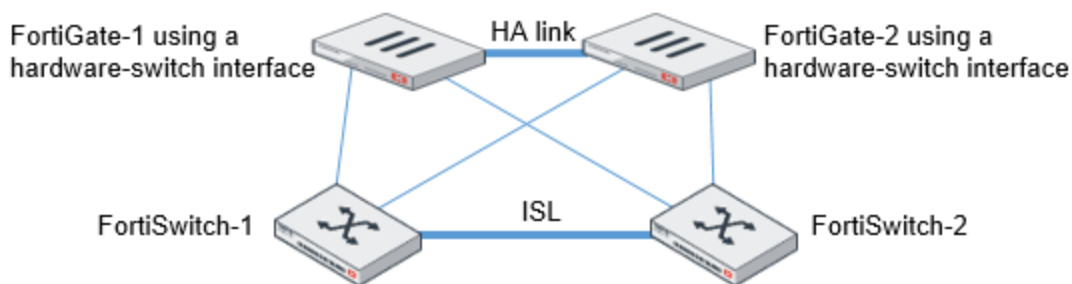
For this network topology to function, use the following commands on each FortiLink hardware-switch interface:

```
config system interface
```

```
edit <FortiLink_hardware_switch_interface>
  set stp enable
end
```

**NOTE:**

- The FortiLink interface uses the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) for neighbor detection. LLDP transmission must be enabled with the `set lldp-transmission enable` command before enabling Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).
- STP and STP forwarding are both supported by the FortiLink hardware-switch interface.
- The software-switch interface is not supported.
- If the FortiGate model does not support aggregate interfaces, you need to configure the FortiGate unit to be the Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) by assigning the lowest STP priority to the FortiGate unit and placing each switch in a different region. You can assign the STP priority to the FortiGate unit with the `set switch-priority` command under `config system stp`. You can move a switch to another region with the `set revision` command under `config stp-settings`.



## FortiLink over a point-to-point layer-2 network

Starting in FortiSwitchOS 6.4.0, you can run FortiLink mode over a point-to-point layer-2 network. You can form an inter-switch link (ISL) between two FortiSwitch units over a layer-2 device or non-FortiSwitch device (such as a wireless bridge). To create this topology, you configure ports on both ends of the link as described in the following procedure and, optionally, configure the tag protocol identifier (TPID) between the two FortiSwitch units.

**NOTE:**

- The `set fortilink-p2p` command is available in FortiLink mode and standalone mode. The `set fortilink-p2p-tpid` command is available only in FortiLink mode.
- The FS-108E, FS-108E-POE, FS-108E-FPOE, FS-124E, FS-124E-POE, FS-124E-FPOE, FS-148E, FS-148E-POE, FS-148F, FS-148F-POE, FS-148F-FPOE, FS-124F, FS-124F-POE, and FS-124F-FPOE models support only the default 0x8100 TPID; TPID changes are not supported.

1. Enable the FortiLink point-to-point network on each FortiSwitch unit:

```
config switch physical-port
  edit <port_name>
    set fortilink-p2p enable
  end
```

2. Make certain that the FortiLink point-to-point TPID value is the same on each FortiSwitch unit. By default, it is 0x8100.

```
config switch global
    set fortilink-p2p-tpid <0x0001-0xfffe>
end
```

## FortiLink mode over a layer-3 network

This feature allows FortiSwitch islands to operate in FortiLink mode over a layer-3 network, even though they are not directly connected to the switch-controller FortiGate unit. FortiSwitch islands contain one or more FortiSwitch units.

There are two main deployment scenarios for using FortiLink mode over a layer-3 network:

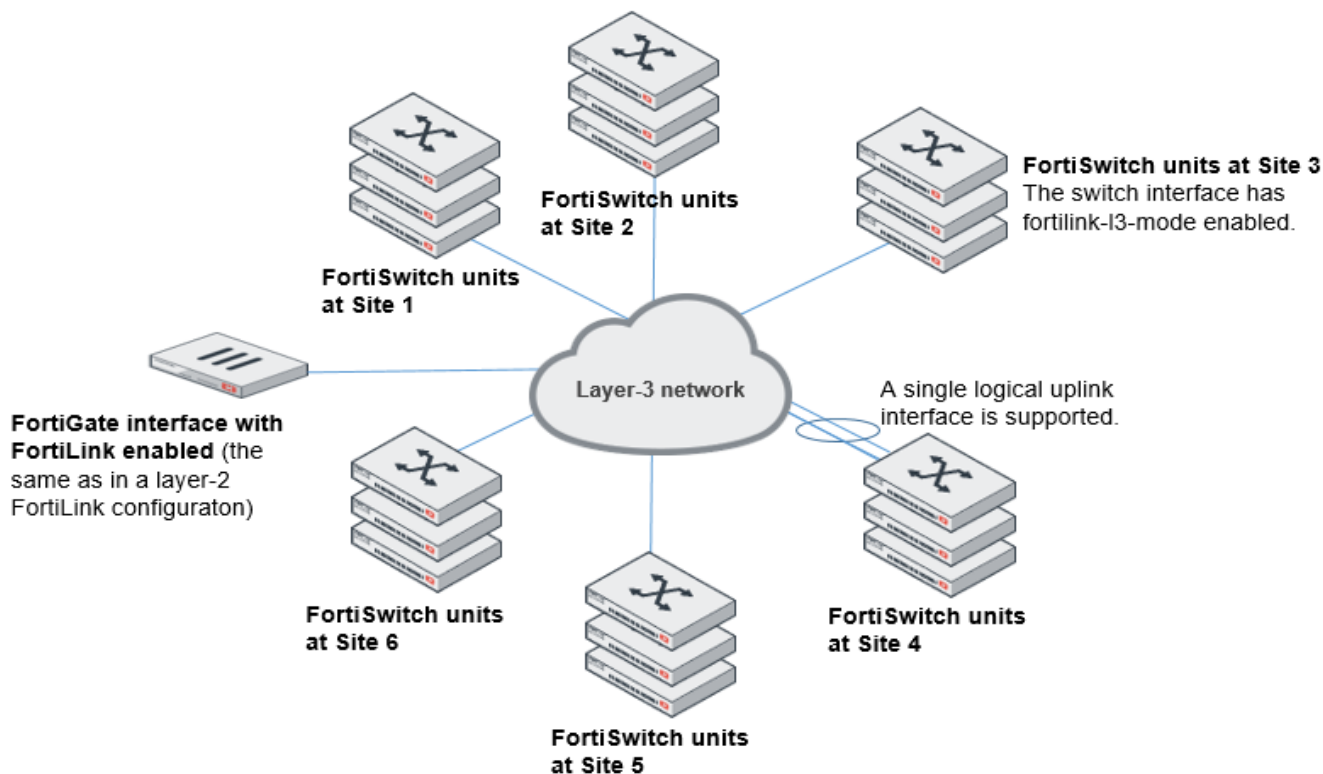
- In-band management, which uses the FortiSwitch unit's internal interface to connect to the layer-3 network
- Out-of-band management, which uses the FortiSwitch unit's mgmt interface to connect to the layer-3 network

Starting in FortOS 6.4.3, you can now configure a FortiLink-over-layer-3 network to use the FortiLink interface as the source IP address for the communication between the FortiGate unit and the FortiSwitch unit. You can still use the outbound interface as the source IP address if you prefer.

### To use the FortiLink interface as the source IP address:

```
config system interface
    edit <FortiLink_interface>
        set switch-controller-source-ip fixed
    end
```

## In-band management



### To configure a FortiSwitch unit to operate in a layer-3 network:

**NOTE:** You must enter these commands in the indicated order for this feature to work.

1. Reset the FortiSwitch to factory default settings with the `execute factoryreset` command.
2. Manually set the FortiSwitch unit to FortiLink mode:

```
config system global
    set switch-mgmt-mode fortilink
end
```

3. Configure the discovery setting for the FortiSwitch unit. You can either use DHCP discovery or static discovery to find the IP address of the FortiGate unit (switch controller) that manages this switch. The default `dhcp-option-code` is 138.

#### To use DHCP discovery:

```
config switch-controller global
    set ac-discovery-type dhcp
    set ac-dhcp-option-code <integer>
end
```

#### To use static discovery:

```
config switch-controller global
```

```
set ac-discovery-type static
config ac-list
  edit <id>
    set ipv4-address <IPv4_address>
  next
end
end
```

4. Configure only one physical port or LAG interface of the FortiSwitch unit as an uplink port. When the FortiSwitch unit is in FortiLink mode, VLAN 4094 is configured on an internal port, which can provide a path to the layer-3 network with the following commands:

```
config switch interface
  edit <port_number>
    set fortilink-l3-mode enable
  end
end
```

The `fortilink-l3-mode` command is only visible after you configure DHCP or static discovery.

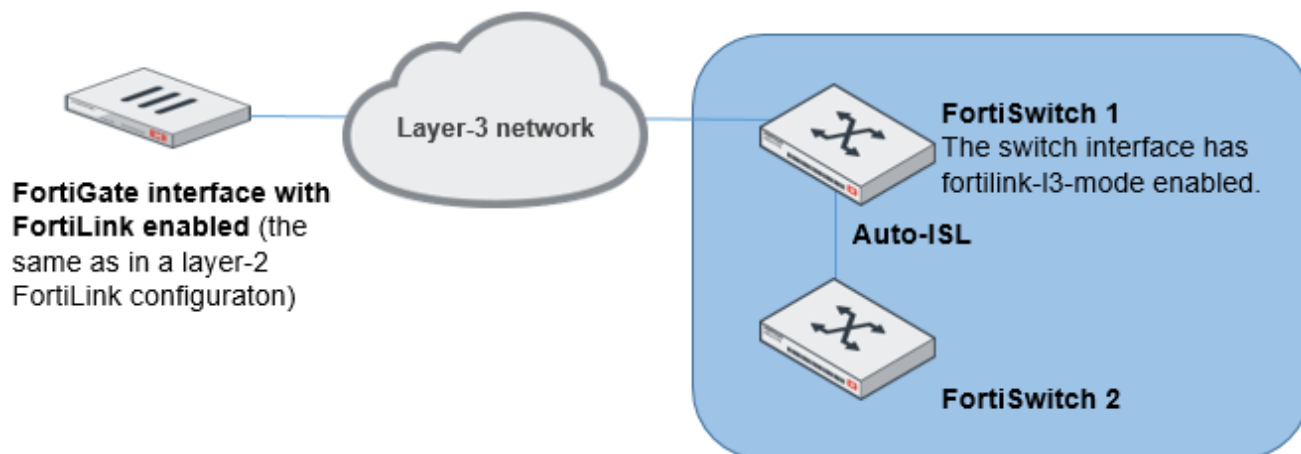
### NOTE:

- Make certain that each FortiSwitch unit can successfully ping the FortiGate unit.
- The NTP server must be configured on the FortiSwitch unit either manually or provided by DHCP. The NTP server must be reachable from the FortiSwitch unit.
- If more than one port (switch interface) has `fortilink-l3-mode` enabled, the FortiSwitch unit automatically forms a link aggregation group (LAG) trunk that contains all `fortilink-l3-mode-enabled` ports as a single logical interface.
- If you have more than one port with `fortilink-l3-mode` enabled, all ports are automatically added to the `__FortiLnkOL3__` trunk. Make certain that the layer-3 network is also configured as a LAG with a matching LACP mode.
- In addition to the two layer-3 discovery modes (DHCP and static), there is the default layer-2 discovery broadcast mode. The layer-3 discovery multicast mode is unsupported.

## Connecting additional FortiSwitch units to the first FortiSwitch unit

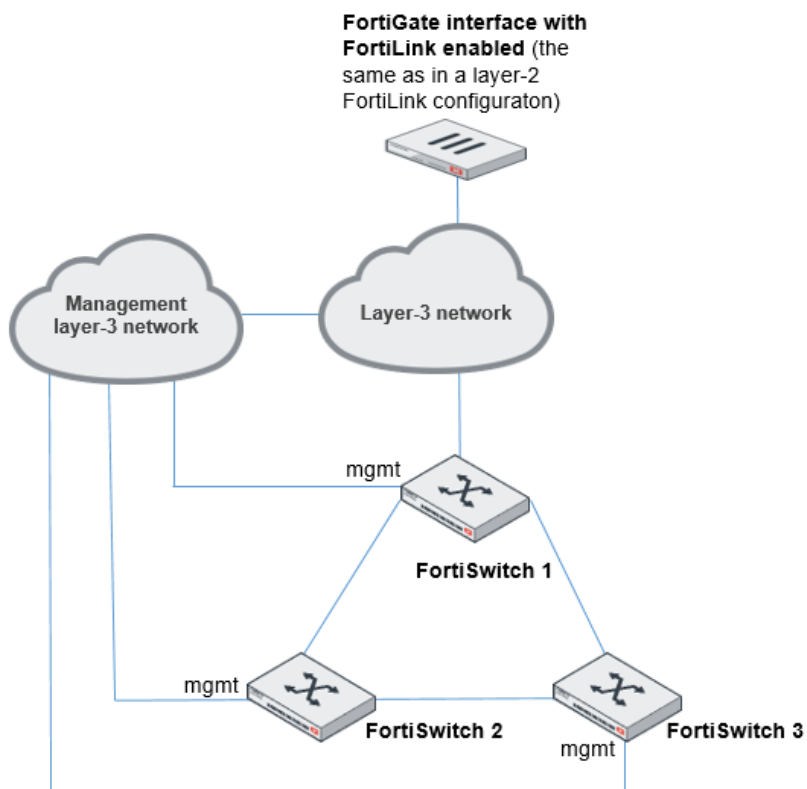
In this scenario, the default FortiLink-enabled port of FortiSwitch 2 is connected to FortiSwitch 1, and the two switches then form an auto-ISL. You only need to configure the discovery settings (see [Step 3](#)) for additional switches (FortiSwitch 2 in the following diagram). You do not need to enable `fortilink-l3-mode` on the uplink port. Check that each FortiSwitch unit can reach the FortiGate unit.





## Out-of-band management

If you use the mgmt port to connect to the layer-3 network, you do not need to enable `fortilink-l3-mode` on any physical port because the mgmt port is directly connected to the layer-3 network.





You can use the internal interface for one FortiSwitch island to connect to the layer-3 network and the mgmt interface for another FortiSwitch island to connect to the same layer-3 network. Do not mix the internal interface connection and mgmt interface connection within a single FortiSwitch island.

---

## Other topologies

If you have a layer-2 loop topology, make certain that the alternative path can reach the FortiGate unit and that STP is enabled on the FortiLink layer-3 trunk.

If you have two FortiSwitch units separately connected to two different intermediary routers or switches, the uplink interfaces for both FortiSwitch units must have `fortilink-l3-mode` enabled. If the FortiSwitch units are also connected to each other, an auto-ISL forms automatically, and STP must be enabled to avoid loops.

A single logical interface (which can be a LAG) is supported when they use the internal interface as the FortiLink management interface.

You can use a LAG connected to a single intermediary router or switch. A topology with multiple ports connected to different intermediary routers or switches is not supported.

## Limitations

The following limitations apply to FortiSwitch islands operating in FortiLink mode over a layer-3 network:

- No layer-2 data path component, such as VLANs, can span across layer 3 between the FortiGate unit and the FortiSwitch unit.
- All FortiSwitch units within an FortiSwitch island must be connected to the same FortiGate unit.
- The FortiSwitch unit needs a functioning layer-3 routing configuration to reach the FortiGate unit or any feature-configured destination, such as syslog or 802.1x.
- Do not connect a layer-2 FortiGate unit and a layer-3 FortiGate unit to the same FortiSwitch unit.
- If the FortiSwitch management port is used for a layer-3 connection to the FortiGate unit, the FortiSwitch island can contain only one FortiSwitch unit. All switch ports must remain in standalone mode. If you need more than one physical link, you can group the links as a link aggregation group (LAG).
- Do not connect a FortiSwitch unit to a layer-3 network and a layer-2 network on the same segment.
- If the network has a wide geographic distribution, some features, such as software downloads, might operate slowly.
- After a topology change, make certain that every FortiSwitch unit can reach the FortiGate unit.
- Splitting ports is not supported when a FortiSwitch unit is managed through layer 3.
- NAT is not supported between the FortiSwitch unit and FortiGate unit.

## Switch redundancy with MCLAG

The following network topologies provide switch redundancy with MCLAG:

- [Standalone FortiGate unit with dual-homed FortiSwitch access on page 51](#)
- [HA-mode FortiGate units with dual-homed FortiSwitch access on page 52](#)

- HA-mode one-tier MLAG on page 52
- FortiLink with an HA cluster of four FortiGate units on page 53
- HA-mode FortiGate units in different sites on page 55
- Isolated LAN/WAN with multiple FortiLink interfaces on page 56
- Three-tier FortiLink MLAG configuration on page 57
- Dual-homed servers connected to a pair of FortiSwitch units using an MLAG on page 58

## Standalone FortiGate unit with dual-homed FortiSwitch access

This network topology provides high port density with two tiers of FortiSwitch units.

See [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MLAG on page 60](#).

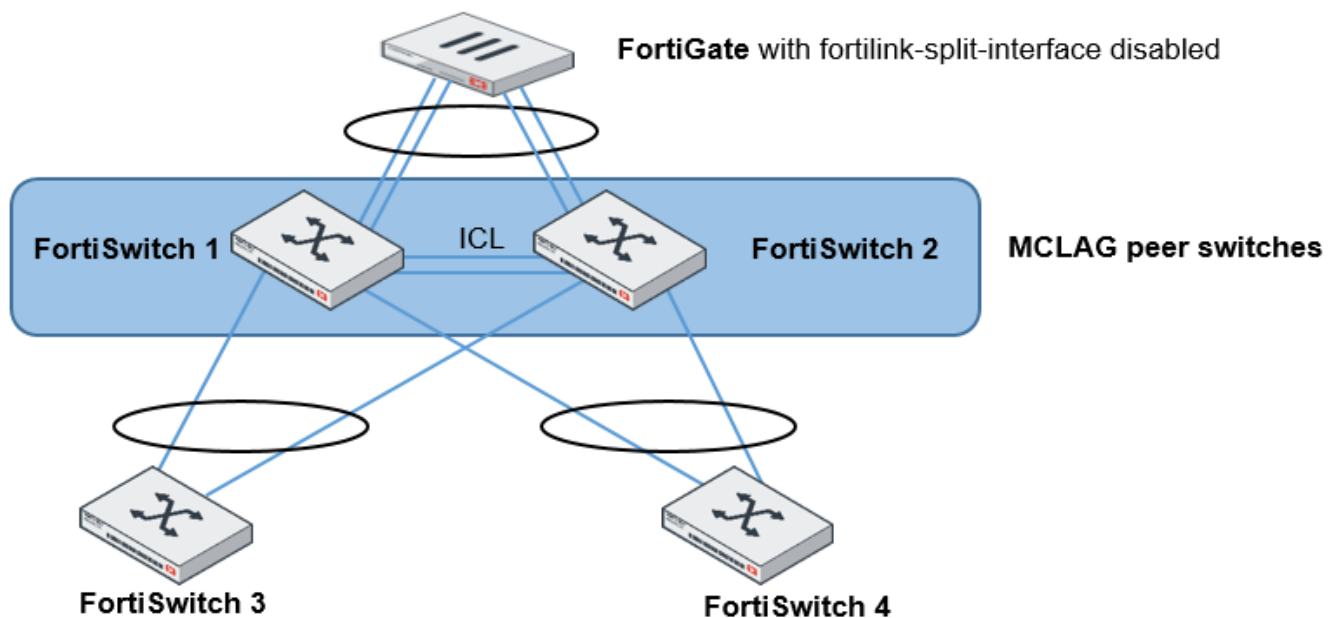
After the MLAG peer group is created between FortiSwitch 1 and FortiSwitch 2, the MLAG trunks are automatically established with the access switches (FortiSwitch 3 and FortiSwitch 4).

### NOTE:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-stp-aware` must be enabled, and STP must be enabled on all ICL trunks. They are both enabled by default.
- Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.

**NOTE:** If you are going to use IGMP snooping with an MLAG topology:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-igmpsnooping-aware` must be enabled. It is enabled by default.
- The `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *disabled* on the ISL and FortiLink trunks; but the `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *enabled* on ICL trunks. These settings are enabled by default.
- IGMP proxy must be enabled.



## HA-mode FortiGate units with dual-homed FortiSwitch access

In HA mode, only one FortiGate is active at a time. If the active FortiGate unit fails, the backup FortiGate unit becomes active.

See [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG on page 60](#).

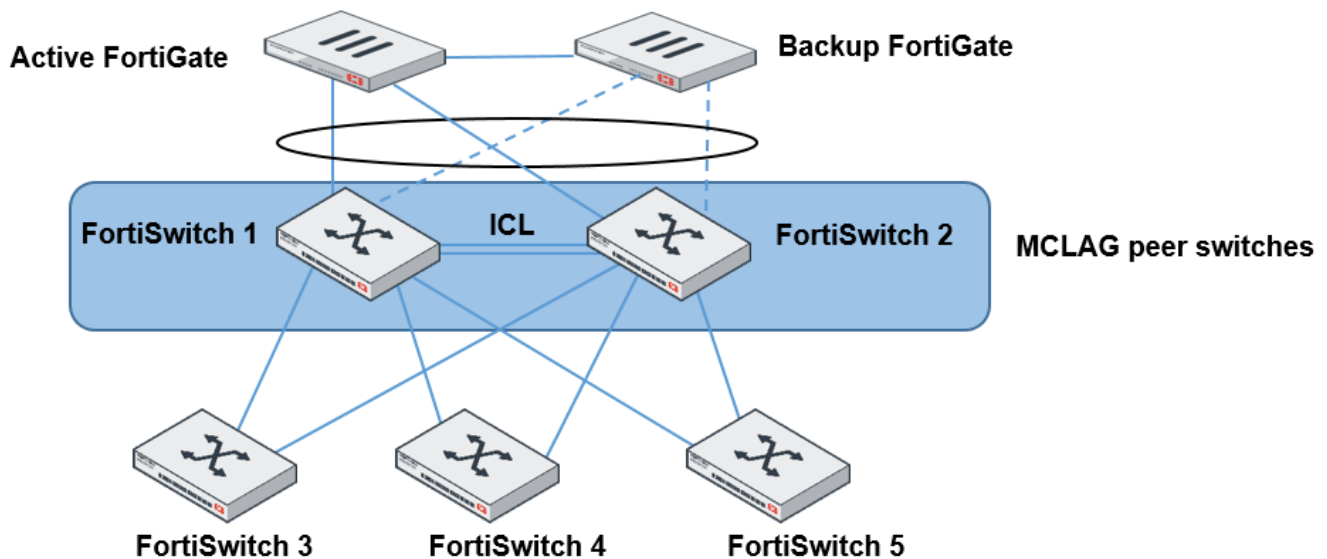
After the MCLAG peer group is created between FortiSwitch 1 and FortiSwitch 2, the MCLAG trunks are automatically established with the access switches (FortiSwitch 3, FortiSwitch 4, and FortiSwitch 5).

### NOTE:

- Before FortiOS 6.2.0, when using HA-mode FortiGate units to manage FortiSwitch units, the HA mode must be active-passive. Starting in FortiOS 6.2.0, the FortiGate HA mode can be either active-passive or active-active.
- On the global switch level, `mclag-stp-aware` must be enabled, and STP must be enabled on all ICL trunks. They are both enabled by default.
- Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.

**NOTE:** If you are going to use IGMP snooping with an MCLAG topology:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-igmpsnooping-aware` must be enabled. It is enabled by default.
- The `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *disabled* on the ISL and FortiLink trunks; but the `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *enabled* on ICL trunks. These settings are enabled by default.
- IGMP proxy must be enabled.



## HA-mode one-tier MCLAG

HA-mode FortiGate units connect to redundant distribution FortiSwitch units. Access FortiSwitch units are arranged in a stack in each IDF, connected to both distribution switches.

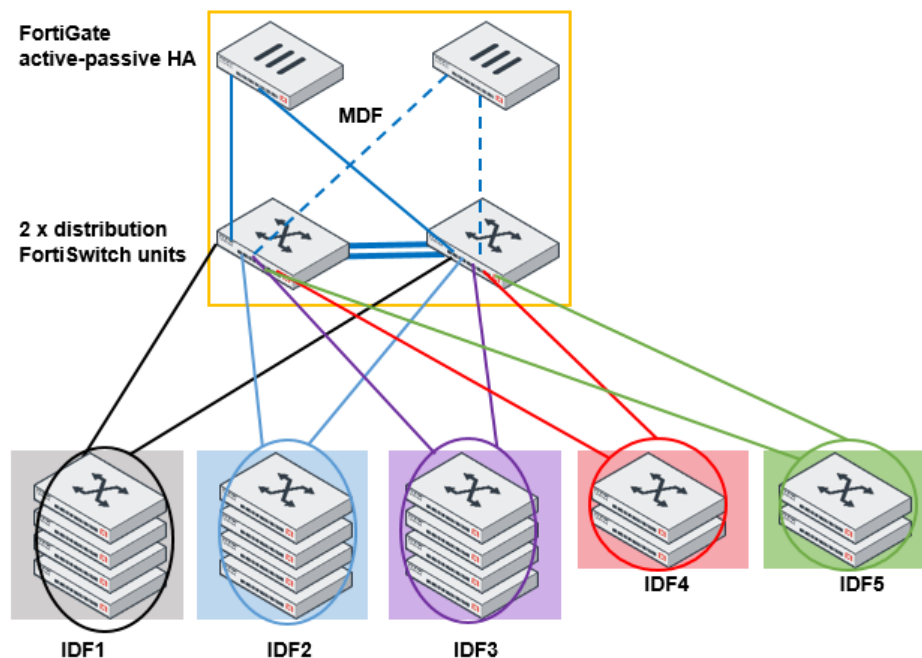
For the FortiLink connection to each distribution switch, you create a FortiLink split interface (an aggregate interface that contains one active link and one standby link).

### NOTE:

- Before FortiSwitchOS 3.6.4, MCLAG was not supported when access rings were present. Starting with FortiSwitchOS 3.6.4, MCLAG is supported, even with access rings present.
- Before FortiOS 6.2.0, when using HA-mode FortiGate units to manage FortiSwitch units, the HA mode must be active-passive. Starting in FortiOS 6.2.0, the FortiGate HA mode can be either active-passive or active-active.
- When you are using the aggregate interface on the FortiGate unit for the FortiLink interface, the `lACP-mode` of the FortiLink aggregate interface must be set to `static`. Unless MCLAG is enabled and you are using 6.2.0 or later, see [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG on page 60](#) for details.
- On the global switch level, `mclag-stp-aware` must be enabled, and STP must be enabled on all ICL trunks. They are both enabled by default.
- This is only an example topology. Other combinations of FortiGate units and FortiSwitch units can be used to create a similar topology.
- Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.

**NOTE:** If you are going to use IGMP snooping with an MCLAG topology:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-igmpsnooping-aware` must be enabled. It is enabled by default.
- The `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *disabled* on the ISL and FortiLink trunks; but the `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *enabled* on ICL trunks. These settings are enabled by default.
- IGMP proxy must be enabled.



## FortiLink with an HA cluster of four FortiGate units

A FortiGate HA cluster consists of two to four FortiGate units configured for HA operation. Each FortiGate in a cluster is called a cluster unit. All cluster units must be the same FortiGate model with the same FortiOS firmware build installed. All cluster units must also have the same hardware configuration (for example, the same number of hard disks) and be running in the same operating mode (NAT mode or transparent mode).

In addition, the cluster units must be able to communicate with each other through their heartbeat interfaces. This heartbeat communication is required for the cluster to be created and to continue operating. Without it, the cluster acts like a collection of standalone FortiGate units.

On startup, after configuring the cluster units with the same HA configuration and connecting their heartbeat interfaces, the cluster units use the FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP) to find other FortiGate units configured for HA operation and to negotiate to create a cluster. During cluster operation, the FGCP shares communication and synchronization information among the cluster units over the heartbeat interface link. This communication and synchronization is called the FGCP heartbeat or the HA heartbeat. Often, this is shortened to just heartbeat.

**NOTE:** You can create an FGCP cluster of up to four FortiGate units.

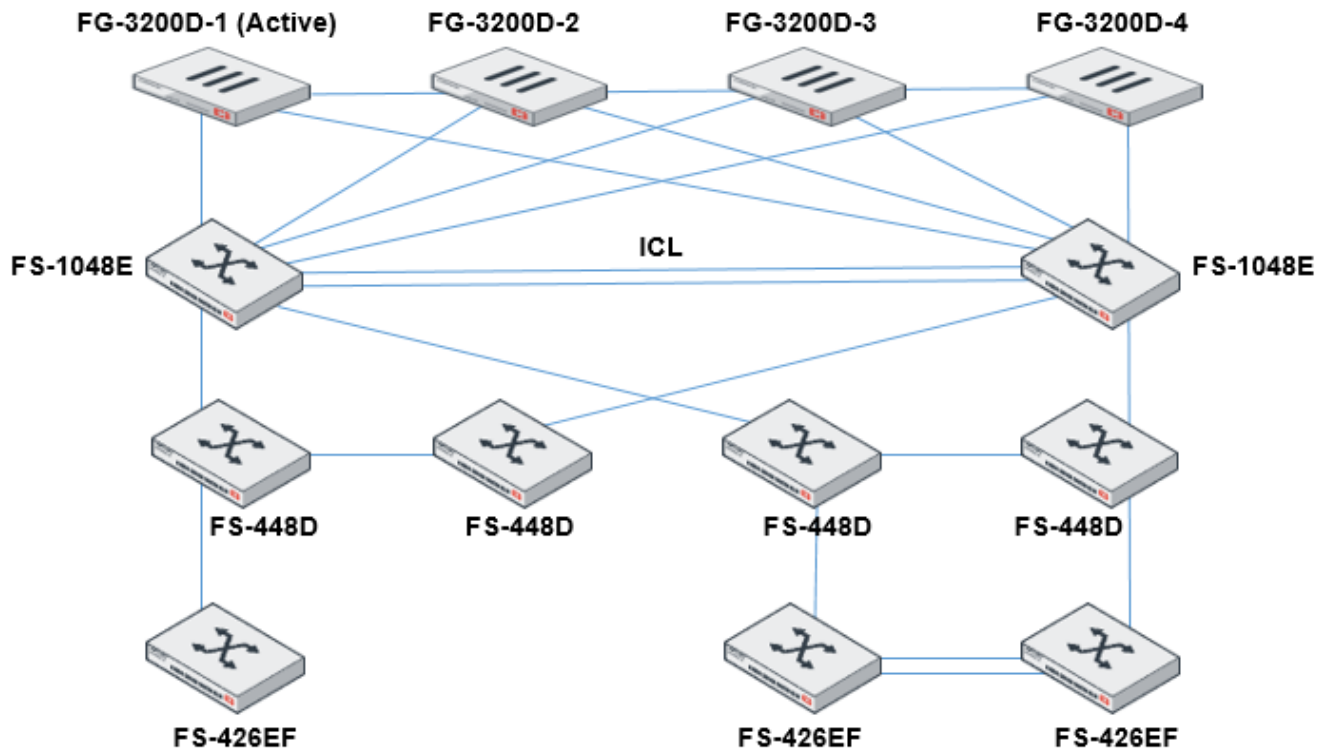
The cluster uses the FGCP to select the primary unit, and to provide device, link, and session failover. The FGCP also manages the two HA modes; active-passive (failover HA) and active-active (load-balancing HA).

The FGCP supports a cluster of two, three, or four FortiGate units. You can add more than two units to a cluster to improve reliability: if two cluster units fail the third will continue to operate and so on. A cluster of three or four units in active-active mode may improve performance because another cluster unit is available for security profile processing. However, active-active FGCP HA results in diminishing performance returns as you add units to the cluster, so the additional performance achieved by adding the third cluster unit might not be worth the cost.

There are no special requirements for clusters of more than two units. Here are a few recommendations though:

- The matching heartbeat interfaces of all of the cluster units must be able to communicate with each other. So each unit's matching heartbeat interface should be connected to the same switch. If the ha1 interface is used for heartbeat communication, the ha1 interfaces of all of the units in the cluster must be connected together so communication can happen between all of the cluster units over the ha1 interface.
- Redundant heartbeat interfaces are recommended. You can reduce the number of points of failure by connecting each matching set of heartbeat interfaces to a different switch. This is not a requirement; however, and you can connect both heartbeat interfaces of all cluster units to the same switch. However, if that switch fails the cluster will stop forwarding traffic.
- For any cluster, a dedicated switch for each heartbeat interface is recommended because of the large volume of heartbeat traffic and to keep heartbeat traffic off of other networks, but it is not required.
- Full mesh HA can scale to three or four FortiGate units. Full mesh HA is not required if you have more than two units in a cluster.
- Virtual clustering can only be done with two FortiGate units.
- Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.
- FortiSwitch units must be connected on a NAT VDOM.

The following network topology uses four FortiGate units; each is a 3200D model and is running FortiOS 6.4.0 build 1533. The FortiSwitch models are 1048E, 448D, and 426EF; they are running FortiSwitchOS 6.2.0 build 0202:



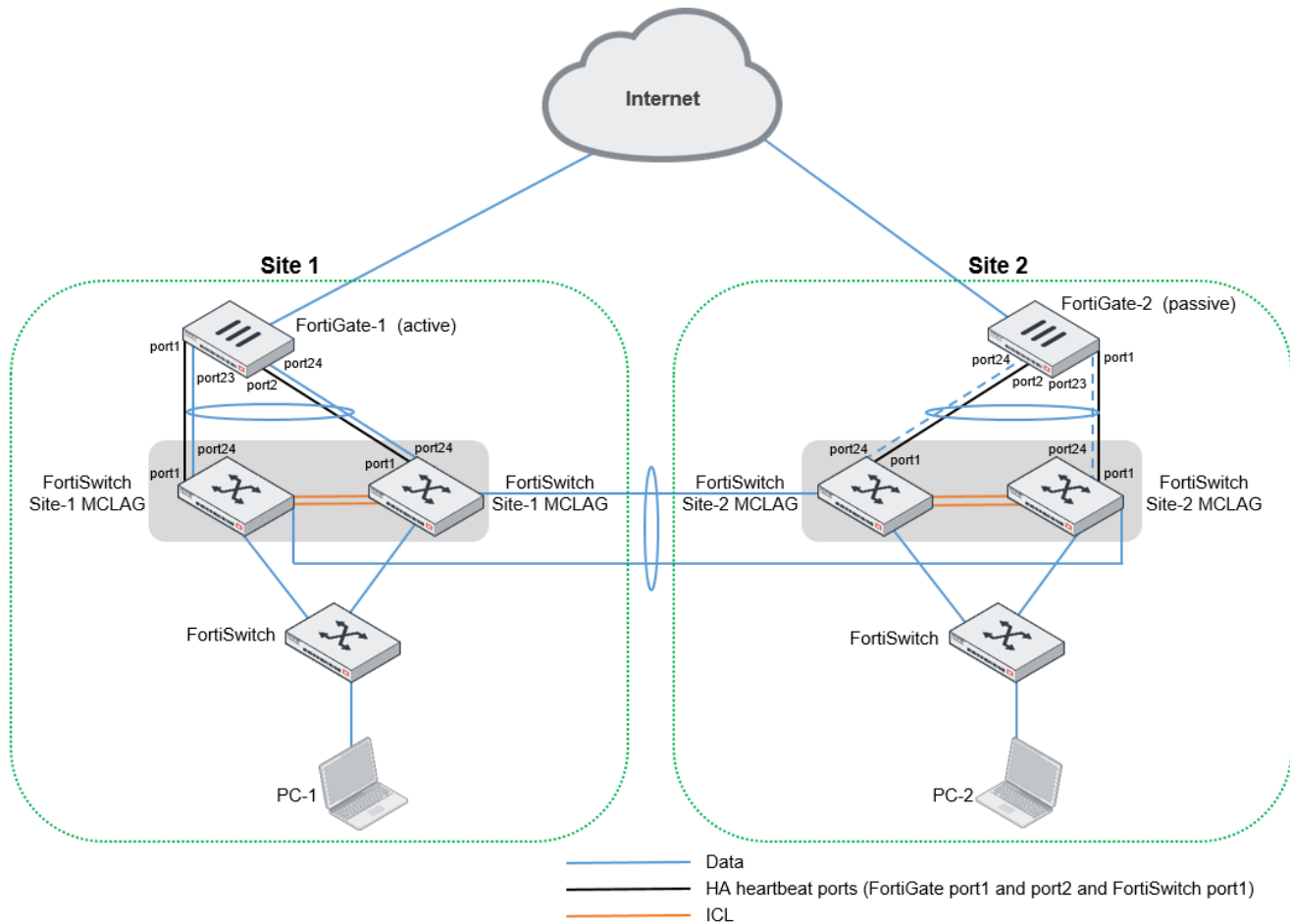
## HA-mode FortiGate units in different sites

There are two sites in this topology, each with a FortiGate unit. The two sites share the FortiGate units in active-passive HA mode. The FortiGate units use the FortiSwitch units in FortiLink mode as the heartbeat connections because of limited physical connections between the two sites.

FortiOS 6.4.2 or higher and FortiSwitchOS 6.4.2 or higher are required.

For example steps, refer to [Deploying MCLAG topologies on page 62](#).

**NOTE:** Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.



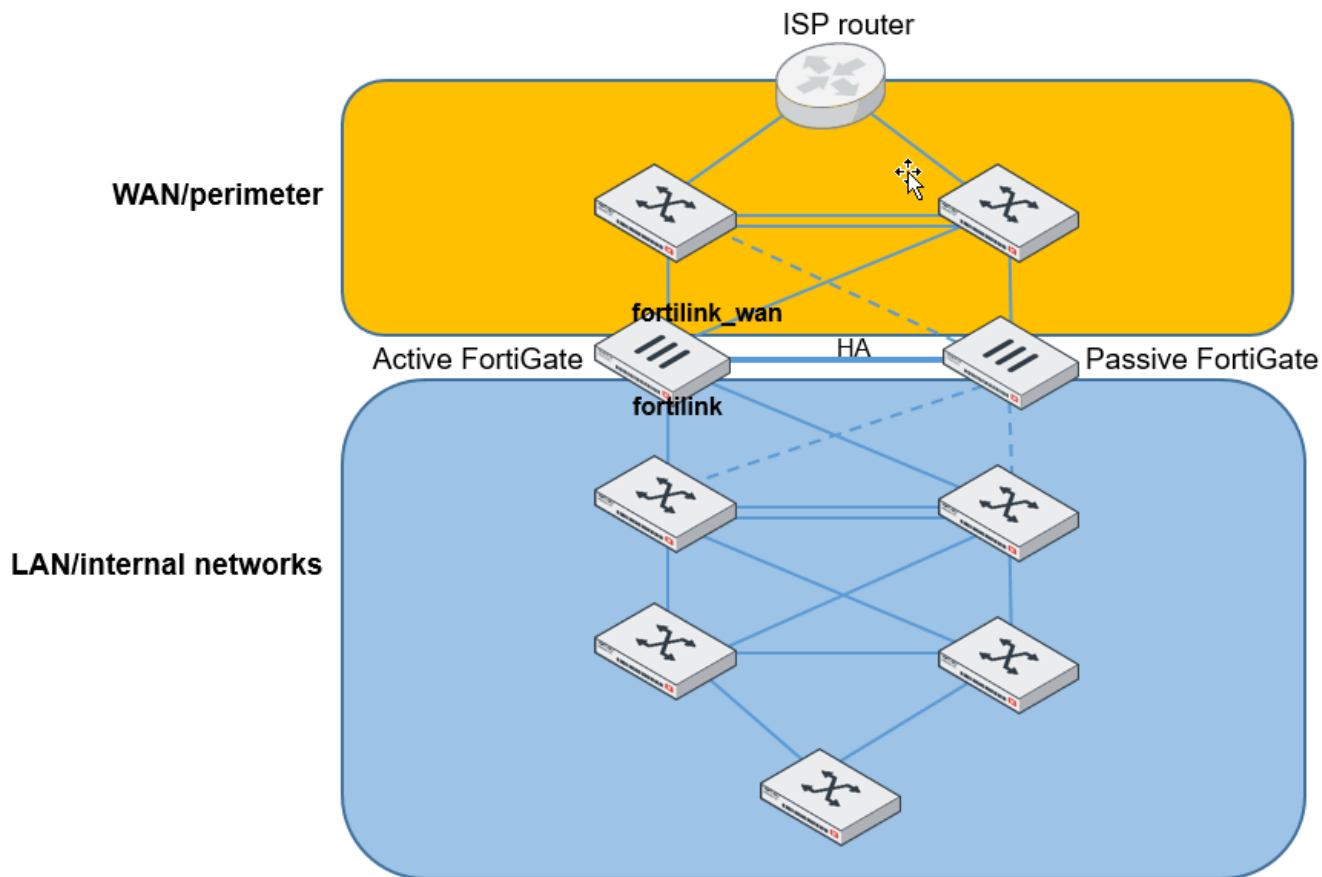
## Isolated LAN/WAN with multiple FortiLink interfaces

This topology makes use of two FortiLink interfaces to provide a dedicated switching layer for each part of the network, LAN and WAN. Each FortiLink interface is independent with its own FortiSwitch VLANs, providing two separate FortiLink stacks.

In this specific example, the FortiLink stack for the LAN networks consists of a two-tier MLAG topology with dual-homed access switches, whereas the WAN FortiLink stack has a one-tier MLAG peer group connected to the ISP routers.

Starting with FortiOS 6.4.2, you can use the GUI to entirely manage multiple FortiLink stacks.



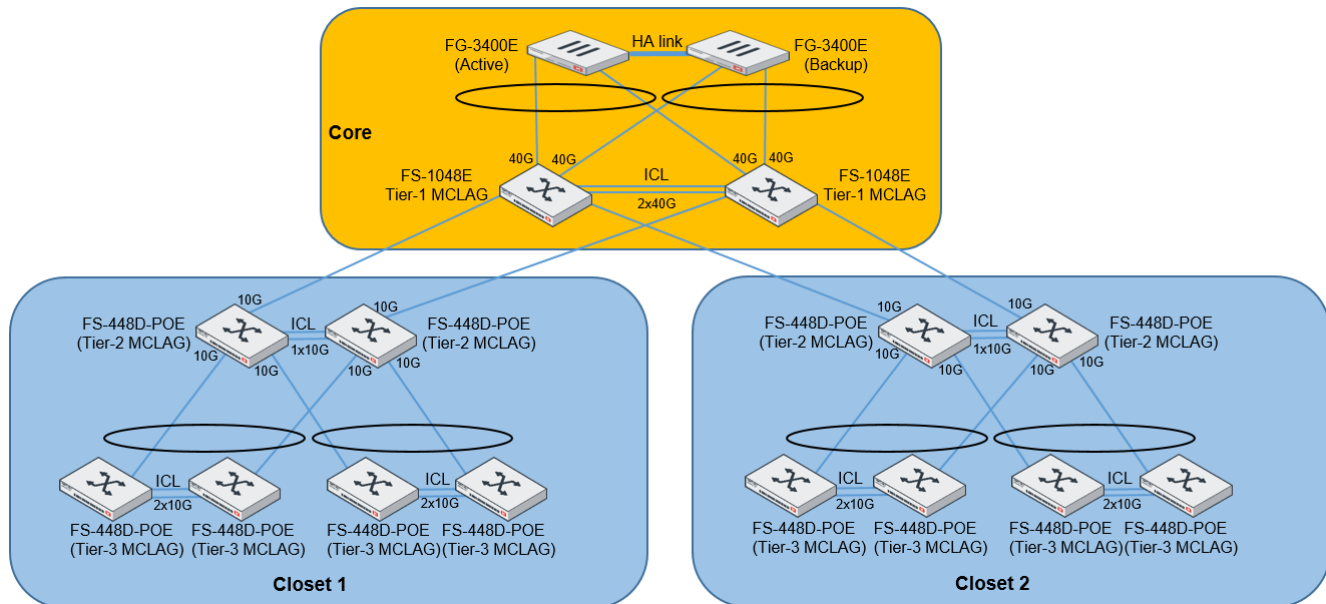


## Three-tier FortiLink MCLAG configuration

To create a three-tier FortiLink MCLAG topology, use FortiOS 6.2.3 GA or later and FortiSwitchOS 6.2.3 GA or later.

MCLAG can be deployed in up to three tiers to expand the FortiSwitch stack, offering link and switch redundancy with the efficient use of the bandwidth because all links are active.

For the procedure, see [Deploying MCLAG topologies on page 62](#).



**NOTE:** Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.

## Dual-homed servers connected to a pair of FortiSwitch units using an MLAG

To configure a multichassis LAG, you need to configure FortiSwitch 1 and FortiSwitch 2 as MLAG peer switches before creating a two-port LAG. Then you set up two MLAGs towards the servers, each MLAG using one port from each FortiSwitch unit. For the procedure, see [Deploying MLAG topologies on page 62](#).

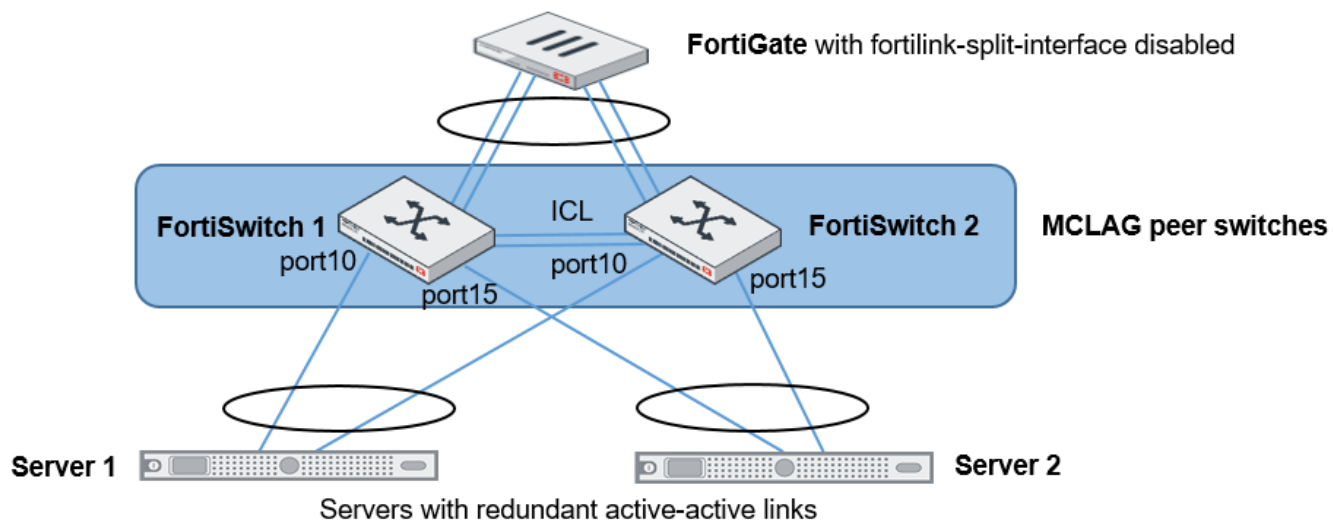
This topology is supported when the FortiGate unit is in HA mode.

### NOTE:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-stp-aware` must be enabled, and STP must be enabled on all ICL trunks. They are both enabled by default.
- Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.

**NOTE:** If you are going to use IGMP snooping with an MLAG topology:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-igmpsnooping-aware` must be enabled. It is enabled by default.
- The `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *disabled* on the ISL and FortiLink trunks; but the `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *enabled* on ICL trunks. These settings are enabled by default.
- IGMP proxy must be enabled.



# MCLAG peer groups

A multichassis LAG (MCLAG) provides node-level redundancy by grouping two FortiSwitch models together so that they appear as a single switch on the network. If either switch fails, the MCLAG continues to function without any interruption, increasing network resiliency and eliminating the delays associated with the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).

This section covers the following topics:

- [MCLAG requirements on page 60](#)
- [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG on page 60](#)
- [Deploying MCLAG topologies on page 62](#)

## MCLAG requirements

- Both peer switches should be of the same hardware model and same software version. Mismatched configurations might work but are unsupported.
- There is a maximum of two FortiSwitch models per MCLAG.
- The routing feature is not available within an MCLAG.
- When `min_bundle` or `max_bundle` is combined with MCLAG, the bundle limit properties are applied only to the local aggregate interface.
- On the global switch level, `mclag-stp-aware` must be enabled, and STP must be enabled on *all* ICL trunks. They are both enabled by default.

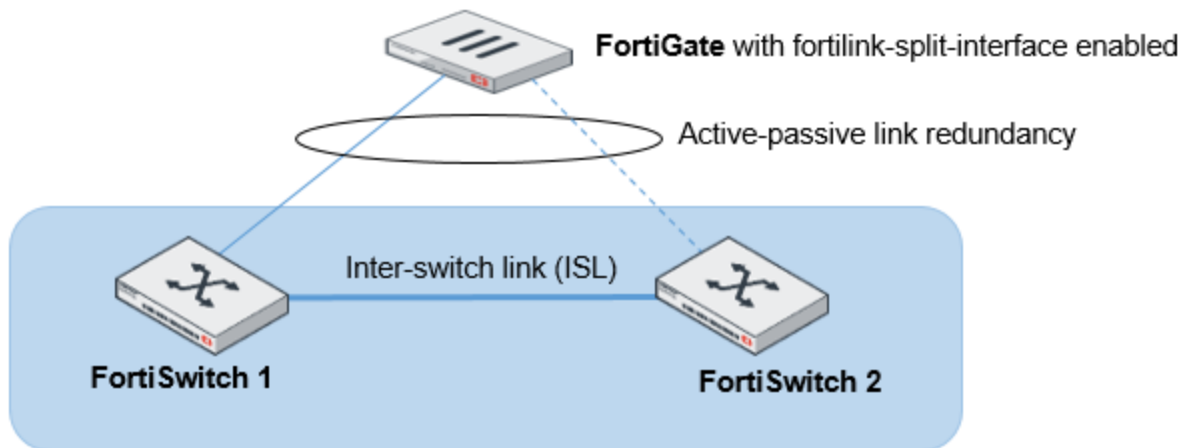
**NOTE:** If you are going to use IGMP snooping with an MCLAG topology:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-igmpsnooping-aware` must be enabled. By default, `mclag-igmpsnooping-aware` is enabled in the FortiSwitchOS CLI.
- The `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *disabled* on the ISL and FortiLink trunks; but the `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *enabled* on ICL trunks. These settings are enabled by default.
- IGMP proxy must be enabled.

## Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG

You can use the FortiLink split interface to connect the FortiLink aggregate interface from one FortiGate unit to two FortiSwitch units. When the FortiLink split interface is enabled, only one link remains active.

In this topology, the FortiLink split interface connects a FortiLink aggregate interface from one FortiGate unit to two FortiSwitch units. The aggregate interface of the FortiGate unit for this configuration contains at least one physical port connected to each FortiSwitch unit.

**NOTE:**

- Make sure that the split interface is enabled.
- This procedure also applies to a FortiGate unit in HA mode.
- More links can be added between the FortiGate unit and FortiSwitch unit.
- On the global switch level, `mclag-stp-aware` must be enabled, and STP must be enabled on all ICL trunks. They are both enabled by default.
- Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.

**NOTE:** If you are going to use IGMP snooping with an MCLAG topology:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-igmpsnooping-aware` must be enabled. It is enabled by default.
- The `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *disabled* on the ISL and FortiLink trunks; but the `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *enabled* on ICL trunks. These settings are enabled by default.
- IGMP proxy must be enabled.

Use the FortiGate CLI to change the FortiSwitch units' configuration without losing their management from the FortiGate unit. You do not need to change anything on the individual FortiSwitch units.

1. Using the FortiGate CLI, assign the LLDP profile "default-auto-mclag-icl" to the ports that should form the MCLAG ICL in FortiSwitch unit 1. For example:

```
FGT_Switch_Controller # config switch-controller managed-switch
FGT_Switch_Controller (managed-switch) # edit FS1E48T419000051
FGT_Switch_Controller (FS1E48T419000051) # config ports
FGT_Switch_Controller (ports) # edit port49
FGT_Switch_Controller (port49) # set lldp-profile default-auto-mclag-icl
FGT_Switch_Controller (port49) # end
FGT_Switch_Controller (FS1E48T419000051) # end
```

2. Repeat step 1 for FortiSwitch unit 2. The port numbers can be different.
3. Disable the split interface in the FortiLink interface. For example:

```
config system interface
  edit <aggregate_name>
    set fortilink-split-interface disable
  next
end
```

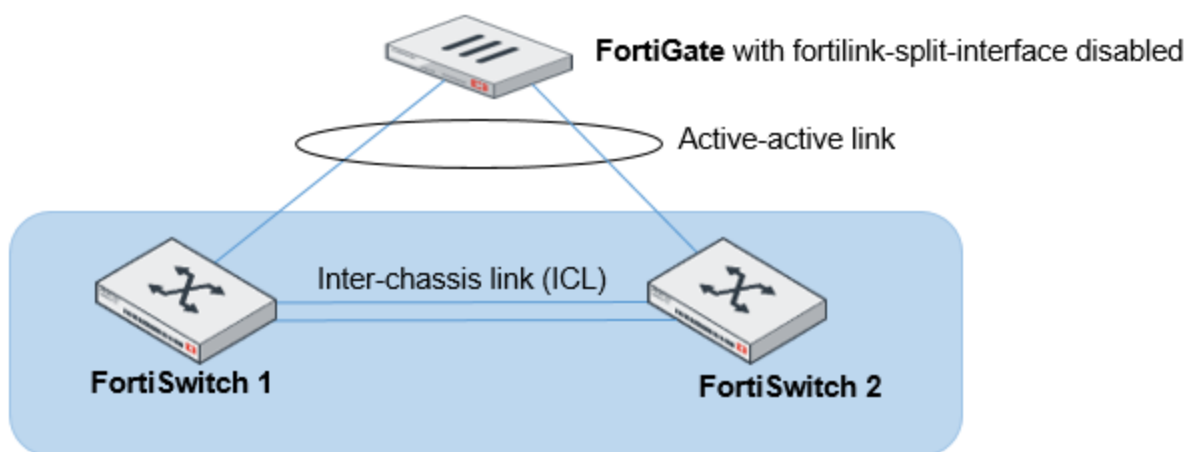
4. From the FortiGate unit, enable the LACP active mode if not already set:

```
config system interface
  edit <aggregate_name>
    set lacp-mode active
  next
end
```

**NOTE:** If you are using FortiOS 6.2 or earlier, use the `set lacp-mode static` command instead.

5. Check that the LAG is working correctly. For example:

```
diagnose netlink aggregate name <aggregate_name>
```



If you disable the MCLAG ICL, you need to enable the `fortilink-split-interface`.

---

## Deploying MCLAG topologies

This section covers the following topics:

- Dual-homed servers connected to a pair of FortiSwitch units using an MCLAG on page 63
- Multi-tiered MCLAG with HA-mode FortiGate units on page 64
- HA-mode FortiGate units in different sites on page 66

## Dual-homed servers connected to a pair of FortiSwitch units using an MCLAG

To configure a multichassis LAG, you need to configure FortiSwitch 1 and FortiSwitch 2 as MCLAG peer switches before creating a two-port LAG. See [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG on page 60](#). Then you set up two MCLAGs towards the servers, each MCLAG using one port from each FortiSwitch unit.

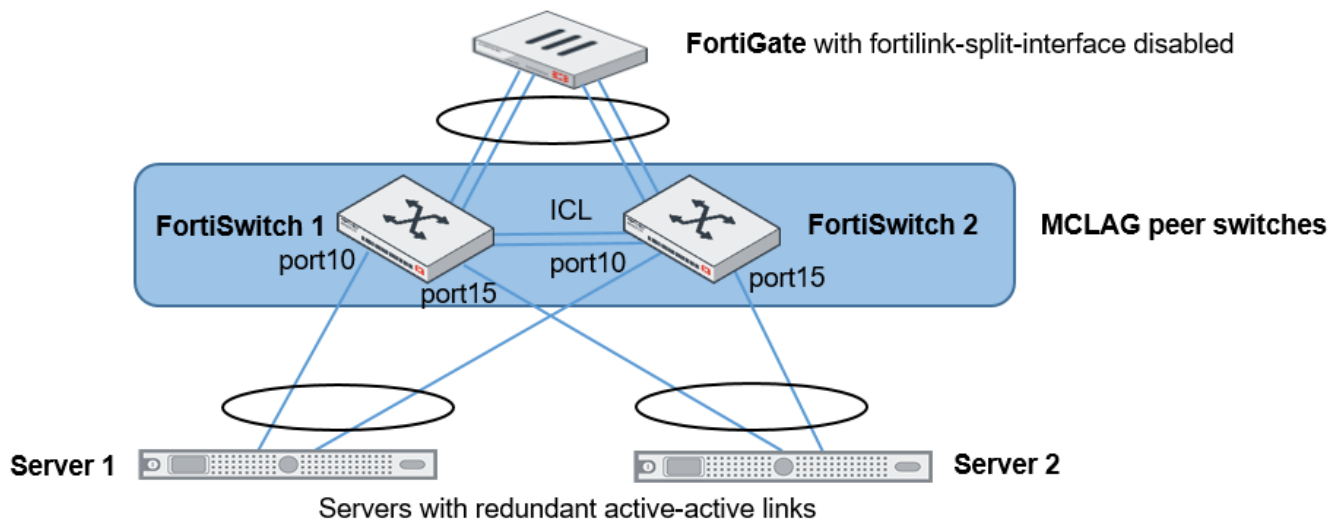
This topology is also supported when the FortiGate unit is in HA mode.

### NOTE:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-stp-aware` must be enabled, and STP must be enabled on all ICL trunks. They are both enabled by default.
- Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.

**NOTE:** If you are going to use IGMP snooping with an MCLAG topology:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-igmpsnooping-aware` must be enabled. It is enabled by default.
- The `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *disabled* on the ISL and FortiLink trunks; but the `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *enabled* on ICL trunks. These settings are enabled by default.
- IGMP proxy must be enabled.



**Step 1: Ensure the MCLAG ICL is already configured between FortiSwitch 1 and FortiSwitch 2.**

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info mclag icl
```

**Step 2: For each server, configure a trunk with MCLAG enabled. For server 1, select port10 on FortiSwitch 1 and FortiSwitch 2. For server 2, select port15 on FortiSwitch 1 and FortiSwitch 2.**

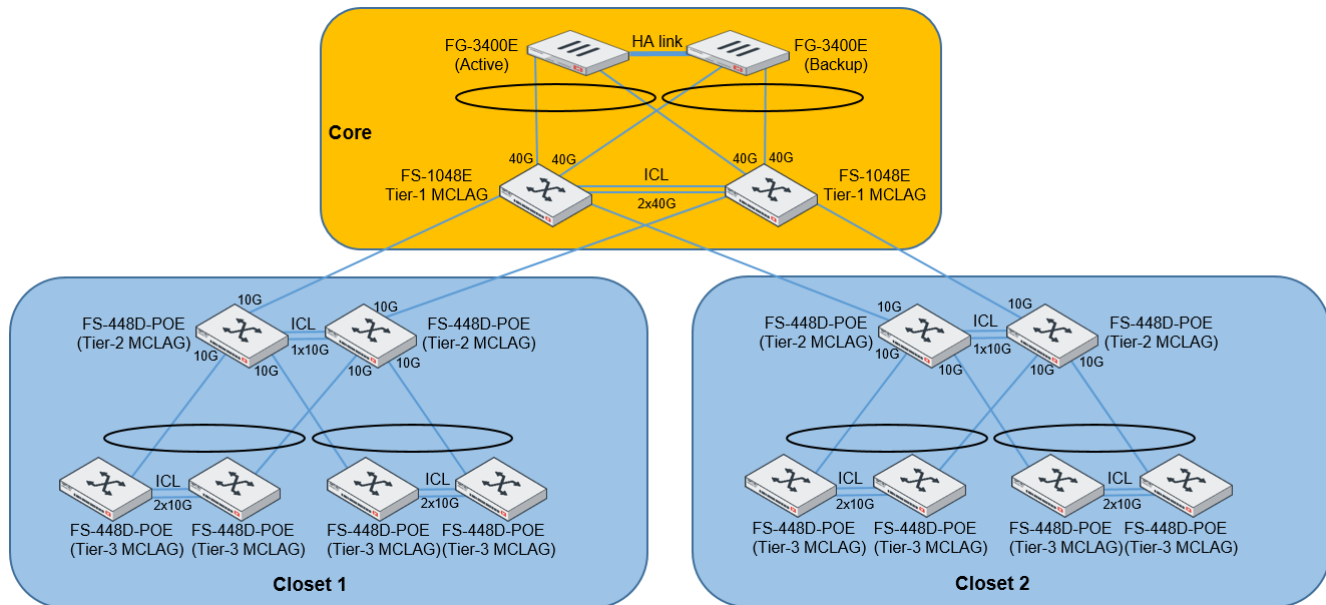
For details, refer to [MCLAG trunks on page 77](#).

**Step 4: Verify the MCLAG configuration.**

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info mclag list
```

## Multi-tiered MCLAG with HA-mode FortiGate units

Use the following procedure to deploy tier-2 and tier-3 MCLAG peer groups from the FortiGate switch controller without the need for direct console access to the FortiSwitch units.



### NOTE:

- Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.
- Before FortiOS 6.2.0, when using HA-mode FortiGate units to manage FortiSwitch units, the HA mode must be active-passive. Starting in FortiOS 6.2.0, the FortiGate HA mode can be either active-passive or active-active.
- In this topology, you must use the `auto-isl-port-group` setting as described in the following configuration example. This setting instructs the switches to group ports from MCLAG peers together into one MCLAG when the inter-switch link (ISL) is formed.
- The `auto-isl-port-group` setting must be done directly on the FortiSwitch unit.
- On the global switch level, `mclag-stp-aware` must be enabled, and STP must be enabled on all ICL trunks. They are both enabled by default.

**NOTE:** If you are going to use IGMP snooping with an MCLAG topology:

- On the global switch level, `mclag-igmpsnooping-aware` must be enabled. It is enabled by default.
- The `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *disabled* on the ISL and FortiLink trunks; but the `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` and `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` settings must be *enabled* on ICL trunks. These settings are enabled by default.
- IGMP proxy must be enabled.

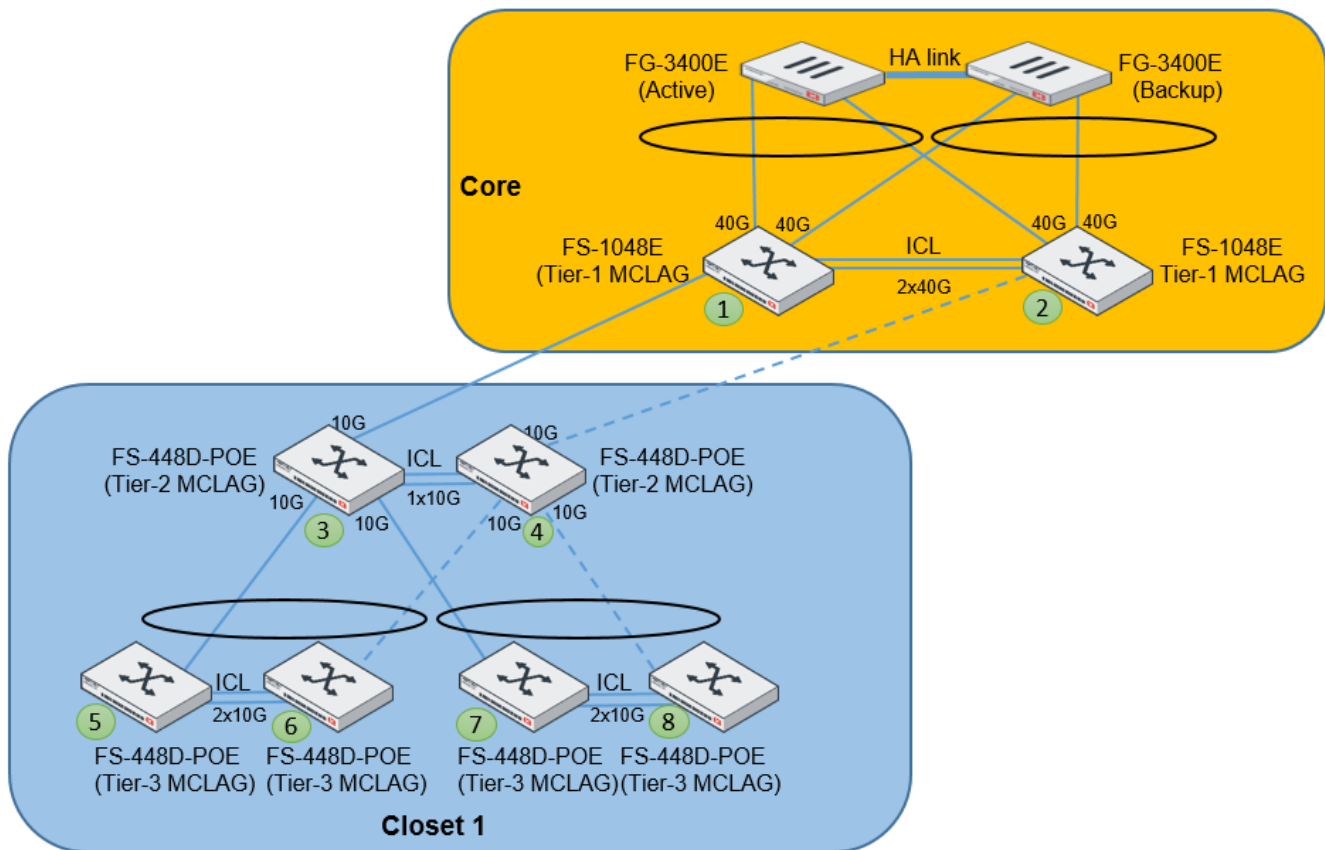
To create a three-tier FortiLink MCLAG topology, use FortiOS 6.2.3 GA or later and FortiSwitchOS 6.2.3 GA or later.

### Tier-1 MCLAG

Wire the two core FortiSwitch units to the FortiGate devices. To configure the FortiSwitch units in the core, see [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG on page 60](#).



## Tier-2 and Tier-3 MCLAGs



1. Connect *only* the tier-2 MCLAG FortiSwitch units 3 and 4 to the core units 1 and 2 (leaving the other switches in Closet 1 disconnected). Wait until they are discovered and authorized (authorization must be done manually if auto-authorization is disabled).
2. Using the FortiGate CLI, assign the LLDP profile “default-auto-mclag-icl” to the ports that should form the MCLAG ICL in the tier-2 MCLAG switches 3 and 4. For example:

```
FGT_Switch_Controller # config switch-controller managed-switch
FGT_Switch_Controller (managed-switch) # edit FS1E48T419000051
FGT_Switch_Controller (FS1E48T419000051) # config ports
FGT_Switch_Controller (ports) # edit port49
FGT_Switch_Controller (port49) # set lldp-profile default-auto-mclag-icl
FGT_Switch_Controller (port49) # end
FGT_Switch_Controller (FS1E48T419000051) # end
```

3. For each tier-2 MCLAG peer group, add an auto-isl-port-group for the tier-2 MCLAG switches on both switch 1 and switch 2:

```
config switch auto-isl-port-group
  edit tier2-closet-1
    set members port1
  next
  edit tier2-closet-2
    set members port2
  next
```

end

This configuration is done directly in the FortiSwitch CLI (or by binding a custom script using custom commands on the FortiGate device. See [Executing custom FortiSwitch scripts on page 212](#).

If there is not a tier-3 MCLAG, skip to step 7.

4. Wire the tier-3 MCLAG switches 5, 6, 7, and 8. Wait until they are discovered and authorized (authorization must be done manually if auto-authorization is disabled).
5. For each tier-3 MCLAG peer group, add two `auto-isl-port-groups` for the tier-3 MCLAG switches on both switch 3 and switch 4:

```
config switch auto-isl-port-group
  edit tier-2-closet-<1>-downlink-trunk-A
    set member <port_name>
  next
  edit tier-2-closet-<1>-downlink-trunk-B
    set member <port_name>
  next
end
```

This configuration is done directly in the FortiSwitch CLI (or by binding a custom script using custom commands on the FortiGate device. See [Executing custom FortiSwitch scripts on page 212](#).

6. Using the FortiGate CLI, assign the LLDP profile “default-auto-mclag-icl” to the ports that should form the ICL in the tier-3 MCLAG peers switches 5 and 6 and switches 7 and 8. For example:

```
FGT_Switch_Controller # config switch-controller managed-switch
FGT_Switch_Controller (managed-switch) # edit FS1E48T419000051
FGT_Switch_Controller (FS1E48T419000051) # config ports
FGT_Switch_Controller (ports) # edit port49
FGT_Switch_Controller (port49) # set lldp-profile default-auto-mclag-icl
FGT_Switch_Controller (port49) # end
FGT_Switch_Controller (FS1E48T419000051) # end
```

7. Connect the access switches to the MCLAG peer groups, and the inter-switch links are formed automatically. Wait until they are discovered and authorized (authorization must be done manually if auto-authorization is disabled).
8. Wire *only* the tier-2 MCLAG FortiSwitch units from Closet 2 (leaving the other switches in Closet 2 disconnected). Wait until they are discovered and authorized (authorization must be done manually if auto-authorization is disabled). Return to step 3 to complete the process for Closet 2.
9. All FortiSwitch units are now authorized, and all MCLAG peer groups are enabled. Proceed with the configuration of the FortiSwitch units by assigning VLANs to the access ports and any other functionality required.

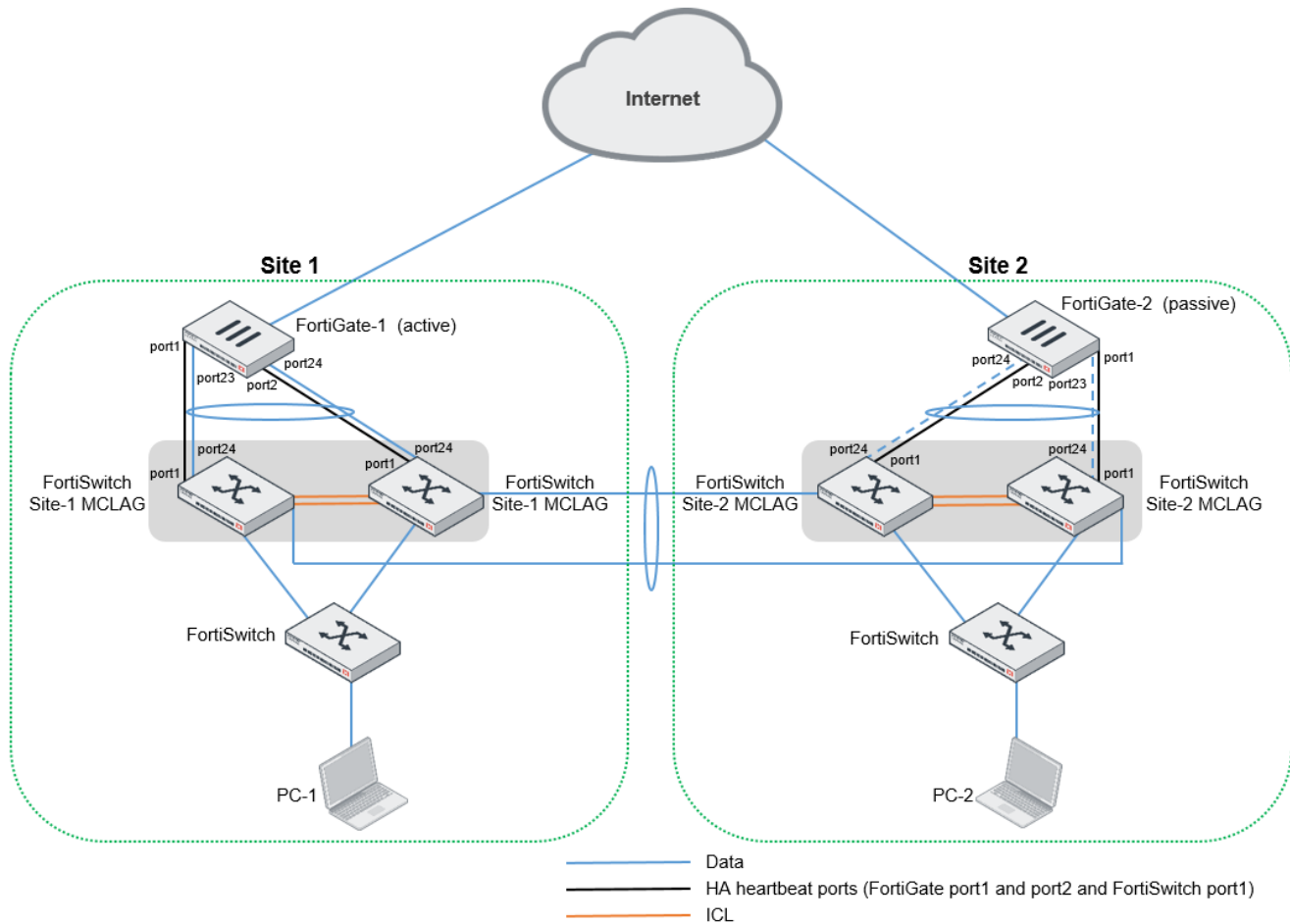
## HA-mode FortiGate units in different sites

There are two sites in this topology, each with a FortiGate unit. The two sites share the FortiGate units in active-passive HA mode. The FortiGate units use the FortiSwitch units in FortiLink mode as the heartbeat connections because of limited physical connections between the two sites.

FortiOS 6.4.2 or higher and FortiSwitchOS 6.4.2 or higher are required.

Refer to the other network topologies in [Deploying MCLAG topologies on page 62](#).

**NOTE:** Fortinet recommends using at least two links for ICL redundancy.



The following steps are an example of how to configure this topology:

1. Disconnect the physical connections between the two sites.
2. On Site 1:
  - a. Use the FortiGate unit to establish the FortiLinks on Site 1. See [Configuring FortiLink on page 14](#).
  - b. Enable the MCLAG-ICL on the core switches of Site 1. See [Transitioning from a FortiLink split interface to a FortiLink MCLAG on page 60](#).
  - c. Enable the HA mode and set the heartbeat ports on FortiGate-1. FortiGate port1 and port2 are used as HA heartbeat ports in this example. For example, set hbdev "port1" 242 "port2" 25.
  - d. Create a switch VLAN or VLANs dedicated to the FortiGate HA heartbeats between the two FortiGate units. For example:

```
config system interface
  edit "hb1"
    set vdom "vdom name"
    set vlanid 998
  next
  edit "hb2"
    set vdom "vdom name"
    set vlanid 999
  next
end
```

- e. Under the `config switch-controller managed-switch` command, set the native VLAN of the switch ports connected to the heartbeat ports using the VLAN created in step 2d.

In this example, you need to assign port1 of core-switch1 to vlan998 and connect port1 of the active FortiGate unit to port1 of core-switch1. Then you need to assign port1 of core-switch2 to vlan999 and connect port2 of the active FortiGate unit to port1 of core-switch2.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <site1-core-switch1>
    edit "port1"
      set vlan "hb1"
    next
  end
  edit <site1-core-switch2>
    edit "port1"
      set vlan "hb2"
    next
  end
```

- f. Make sure all FortiLinks are up.
3. On Site 2:
    - a. Configure Site 2 using the same configuration as step 2, except for the HA priority.
    - b. Make sure all FortiLinks are up.
  4. Disconnect the physical connections for the FortiGate HA and FortiLink interface on Site 2.
  5. Connect the cables between the two pairs of core switches in Site 1 and Site 2.
  6. On both sites:
    - a. On the MCLAG Peer Group switches at Site 1, use the `config switch auto-isl-port-group` command in the FortiSwitch CLI to group the ports to Site 2. See [Deploying MCLAG topologies on page 62](#).
    - b. On the MCLAG Peer Group switches at Site 2, use the `config switch auto-isl-port-group` command in the FortiSwitch CLI to group the ports to Site 1. See [Deploying MCLAG topologies on page 62](#).
    - c. Make sure all the FortiLinks are up.
  7. Connect the FortiGate HA and FortiLink interface connections on Site 2.
  8. Check the configuration:
    - a. On both sites, enter the `get system ha status` command on the FortiGate unit to check the HA status.
    - b. On the active (master) FortiGate unit, enter the `execute switch-controller get-conn-status` command to check the FortiLink state.

9. In the GUI, the example configuration looks like the following:



# Configuring FortiSwitch VLANs and ports

This section covers the following topics:

- [Configuring VLANs on page 70](#)
- [Configuring ports using the GUI on page 73](#)
- [Configuring port speed and status on page 73](#)
- [Configuring PoE on page 74](#)
- [Adding 802.3ad link aggregation groups \(trunks\) on page 76](#)
- [Configuring FortiSwitch split ports \(phy-mode\) in FortiLink mode on page 79](#)
- [Restricting the type of frames allowed through IEEE 802.1Q ports on page 83](#)
- [Multitenancy and VDOMs on page 83](#)

## Configuring VLANs

Use Virtual Local Area Networks (VLANs) to logically separate a LAN into smaller broadcast domains. VLANs allow you to define different policies for different types of users and to set finer control on the LAN traffic. (Traffic is only sent automatically within the VLAN. You must configure routing for traffic between VLANs.)

From the FortiGate unit, you can centrally configure and manage VLANs for the managed FortiSwitch units.

In FortiSwitchOS 3.3.0 and later releases, the FortiSwitch supports untagged and tagged frames in FortiLink mode. The switch supports up to 1,023 user-defined VLANs. You can assign a VLAN number (ranging from 1-4095) to each of the VLANs. For FortiSwitch units in FortiLink mode (FortiOS 6.2.0 and later), you can assign a name to each VLAN.

You can configure the default VLAN for each FortiSwitch port as well as a set of allowed VLANs for each FortiSwitch port.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Creating VLANs on page 70](#)
- [Viewing FortiSwitch VLANs on page 72](#)
- [Changing the VLAN configuration mode on page 73](#)

## Creating VLANs

Setting up a VLAN requires you to create the VLAN and assign FortiSwitch ports to the VLAN. You can do this with either the Web GUI or CLI.

## Using the GUI

### To create the VLAN:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch VLANs*, select *Create New*, and change the following settings:

<b>Interface Name</b>	VLAN name
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Enter a number (1-4094)
<b>Color</b>	Choose a unique color for each VLAN, for ease of visual display.
<b>Role</b>	Select <i>LAN</i> , <i>WAN</i> , <i>DMZ</i> , or <i>Undefined</i> .

2. Enable *DHCP* for IPv4 or IPv6.
3. Set the *Administrative access* options as required.
4. Select *OK*.

### To assign FortiSwitch ports to the VLAN:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports*.
2. Click a port row.
3. Click the *Native VLAN* column in one of the selected entries to change the native VLAN.
4. Select a VLAN from the displayed list. The new value is assigned to the selected ports.
5. Click the + icon in the *Allowed VLANs* column to change the allowed VLANs.
6. Select one or more of the VLANs (or the value *all*) from the displayed list. The new value is assigned to the selected port.

## Using the FortiSwitch CLI

1. Create the marketing VLAN.

```
config system interface
  edit <vlan name>
    set vlanid <1-4094>
    set color <1-32>
    set interface <FortiLink-enabled interface>
  end
```

2. Set the VLAN's IP address.

```
config system interface
  edit <vlan name>
    set ip <IP address> <Network mask>
  end
```

3. Enable a DHCP Server.

```
config system dhcp server
  edit 1
    set default-gateway <IP address>
    set dns-service default
    set interface <vlan name>
```

```

    config ip-range
        set start-ip <IP address>
        set end-ip <IP address>
    end
    set netmask <Network mask>
end

```

#### 4. Assign ports to the VLAN.

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <Switch ID>
        config ports
            edit <port name>
                set vlan <vlan name>
                set allowed-vlans <vlan name>
            or
                set allowed-vlans-all enable
            next
        end
    end
end

```

#### 5. Assign untagged VLANs to a managed FortiSwitch port:

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <managed-switch>
        config ports
            edit <port>
                set untagged-vlans <VLAN-name>
            next
        end
    next
end

```

## Viewing FortiSwitch VLANs

The *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch VLANs* page displays VLAN information for the managed switches.

<div> <span>+ Create New</span> <span>Edit</span> <span>Delete</span> </div> <div> <input type="text" value="Search"/> <span>Q</span> </div>			
Name	VLAN ID	IP	Administrative Access
vsw.roger	1	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	
voice	4091		
video	4090		
rspan	4092		
onboarding	4089		

Each entry in the VLAN list displays the following information:

- **Name**—name of the VLAN
- **VLAN ID**—the VLAN number
- **IP/Netmask**—address and mask of the subnetwork that corresponds to this VLAN
- **Access**—administrative access settings for the VLAN
- **Ref**—number of configuration objects referencing this VLAN



## Changing the VLAN configuration mode

You can change which VLANs the `set allowed-vlans` command affects.

If you want the `set allowed-vlans` command to apply to all user-defined VLANs, use the following CLI commands:

```
config switch-controller global
    set vlan-all-mode defined
end
```

If you want the `set allowed-vlans` command to apply to all possible VLANs (1-4094), use the following CLI commands:

```
config switch-controller global
    set vlan-all-mode all
end
```

**NOTE:** You cannot use the `set vlan-all-mode all` command with the `set vlan-optimization enable` command.

## Configuring ports using the GUI

You can use the *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports* page to do the following with FortiSwitch switch ports:

- Set the native VLAN and add more VLANs
- Edit the description of the port
- Enable or disable the port
- Set the access mode of the port:
  - *Static*—The port does not use a dynamic port policy or FortiSwitch network access control (NAC) policy.
  - *Assign Port Policy*—The port uses a dynamic port policy.
  - *NAC*—The port uses a FortiSwitch NAC policy.
- Enable or disable PoE for the port
- Enable or disable DHCP snooping (if supported by the port)
- Enable or disable whether a port is an edge port
- Enable or disable STP (if supported by the port)
- Enable or disable loop guard (if supported by the port)
- Enable or disable STP BPDU guard (if supported by the port)
- Enable or disable STP root guard (if supported by the port)

## Configuring port speed and status

**To set port speed and other base port settings:**

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
        config ports
            edit <port_name>
```

```
        set description <text>
        set speed <speed>
        set status {down | up}
    end
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port1
        set description "First port"
        set speed auto
        set status up
      end
    end
end
```

**To check the port properties:**

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info port-properties [<FortiSwitch_serial_number>] [<port_
name>]
```

If the FortiSwitch serial number is not specified, results for all FortiSwitch units are returned. If the port name is not specified, results for all ports are returned.

For example:

```
FortiGate-100F # diagnose switch-controller switch-info port-properties S524DF4K15000024
port18
```

```
Vdom: root
Switch: S524DF4K15000024
Port: port18
  PoE          : 802.3af/at, 30.0W
  Connector    : RJ45
  Speed        : 10Mhalf/10Mfull/100Mhalf/100Mfull/1Gauto/auto
```

## Configuring PoE

**NOTE:** The following PoE CLI commands are available starting in FortiSwitchOS 3.3.0.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Enabling PoE on the port on page 74](#)
- [Enabling PoE pre-standard detection on page 75](#)
- [Resetting the PoE port on page 75](#)
- [Displaying general PoE status on page 76](#)

### Enabling PoE on the port

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

```

config ports
    edit <port_name>
        set poe-status {enable | disable}
    end
end

```

For example:

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S524DF4K15000024
        config ports
            edit port1
                set poe-status enable
            end
        end
    end
end

```

## Enabling PoE pre-standard detection

Depending on the FortiSwitch model, you can manually change the PoE pre-standard detection setting on the global level or on the port level. Starting with FortiOS 6.4.5, the factory default setting for `poe-pre-standard-detection` is `disable`.



PoE pre-standard detection is a global setting for the following FortiSwitch models: FSR-112D-POE, FS-548DFPOE, FS-524D-FPOE, FS-108D-POE, FS-224D-POE, FS-108E-POE, FS-108E-FPOE, FS-124E-POE, and FS-124EFPOE. For the other FortiSwitch PoE models, PoE pre-standard detection is set on each port.

On the global level, set `poe-pre-standard-detection` with the following commands:

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
        set poe-pre-standard-detection {enable | disable}
    next
end

```

On the port level, set `poe-pre-standard-detection` with the following commands:

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
        config ports
            edit <port_name>
                set poe-pre-standard-detection {enable | disable}
            next
        end
    next
end

```

## Resetting the PoE port

Power over Ethernet (PoE) describes any system that passes electric power along with data on twisted pair Ethernet cabling. Doing this allows a single cable to provide both data connection and electric power to devices (for example, wireless access points, IP cameras, and VoIP phones).

The following command resets PoE on the port:

```
execute switch-controller poe-reset <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
```

## Displaying general PoE status

```
get switch-controller <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
```

The following example displays the PoE status for port 6 on the specified switch:

```
# get switch-controller poe FS108D3W14000967 port6
Port(6) Power:3.90W, Power-Status: Delivering Power
Power-Up Mode: Normal Mode
Remote Power Device Type: IEEE802.3AT PD
Power Class: 4
Defined Max Power: 30.0W, Priority:3
Voltage: 54.00V
Current: 78mA
```

## Adding 802.3ad link aggregation groups (trunks)

If the trunk is in LACP mode and has ports with different speeds, the ports of the same negotiated speed are grouped in an aggregator.

If multiple aggregators exist, one and only one of the aggregators is used by the trunk.

You can use the CLI to specify how the aggregator is selected:

- When the `aggregator-mode` is set to `bandwidth`, the aggregator with the largest bandwidth is selected. This mode is the default.
- When the `aggregator-mode` is set to `count`, the aggregator with the largest number of ports is selected.

### Using the FortiGate GUI:

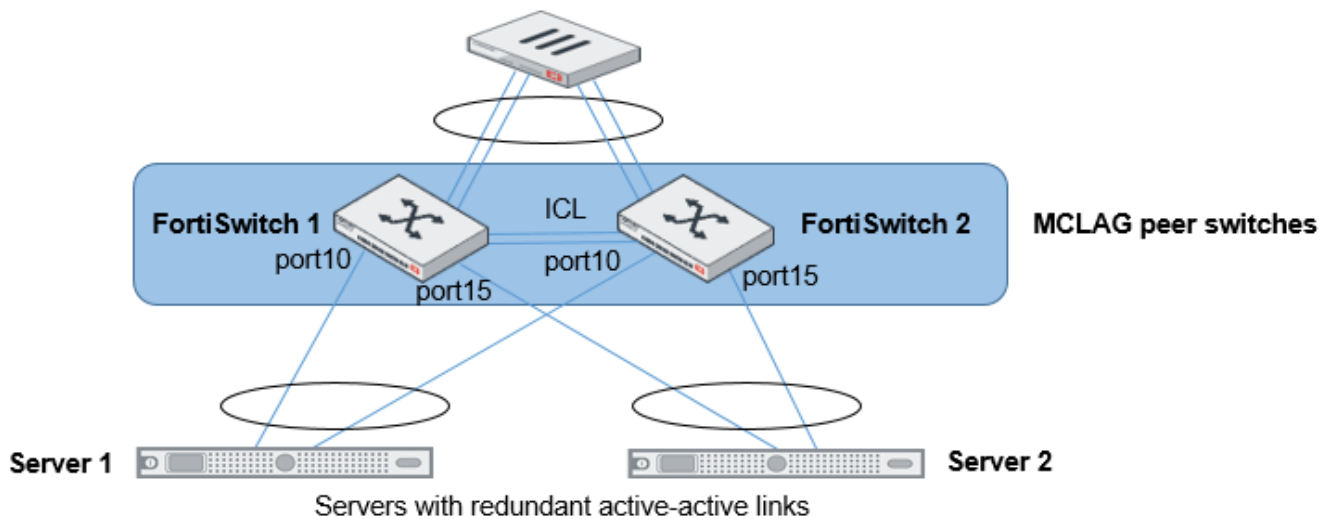
1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports*.
2. Click *Create New > Trunk*.
3. In the New Trunk Group page, enter a *Name* for the trunk group.
4. Select two or more physical ports to add to the trunk group and then select *Apply*.
5. Select the *Mode*: Static, Passive LACP, or Active LACP.
6. Select *Enabled* or *Disabled* for the MCLAG.
  - An MCLAG peer group must be configured before adding a trunk with MCLAG enabled. See [MCLAG peer groups on page 60](#).
  - Make sure to select ports from switches that are part of the same MCLAG peer group.
7. Select *OK*.

### Using the the FortiGate CLI:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <trunk_name>
        set type trunk
        set mode {static | lacp-passive | lacp-active}
        set aggregator-mode {bandwidth | count}
        set bundle {enable | disable}
        set min-bundle <int>
        set max-bundle <int>
        set members <port1 port2 ...>
      next
    end
  end
end
```

## MCLAG trunks

The MCLAG trunk consists of 802.3ad link aggregation groups with members that belong to different FortiSwitch units. To configure an MCLAG trunk, you need an MCLAG peer group (see [MCLAG peer groups on page 60](#)). The MCLAG trunk members are selected from the same MCLAG peer group.



## Using the GUI

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports*.
2. Select *Create New > Trunk*.
3. Enter a name for the MLAG trunk.
4. For the MLAG status, select *Enabled* to create an active MLAG trunk.
5. For the mode, select *Static*, *Passive LACP*, or *Active LACP*.
  - Set to *Static* for static aggregation. In this mode, no control messages are sent, and received control messages are ignored.
  - Set to *Passive LACP* to passively use LACP to negotiate 802.3ad aggregation.
  - Set to *Active LACP* to actively use LACP to negotiate 802.3ad aggregation.
6. For trunk members, select *Select Members*, select the ports to include in the MLAG trunk, and then select *OK* to save the trunk members. **NOTE:** The members must belong to the same MLAG peer group.
7. Select *OK* to save the MLAG configuration.  
The ports are listed as part of the MLAG trunk on the FortiSwitch Ports page.

## Using the CLI

Configure a trunk in each switch that is part of the MLAG pair:

- The trunk name for each switch must be the same.
- The port members for each trunk can be different.
- After you enable MLAG, you can enable LACP if needed.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
edit "<switch-id>"
  config ports
    edit "<trunk name>"
      set type trunk
      set mode {static | lacp-passive | lacp-active}
      set members "<port>,<port>"
      set mlag enable
    next
  end
```

next

Variable	Description	Default
<switch-id>	FortiSwitch serial number.	No default
<trunk name>	Enter a name for the MCLAG trunk.  <b>NOTE:</b> Each FortiSwitch unit that is part of the MCLAG must have the same MCLAG trunk name configured.	No default
type trunk	Set the interface type to a trunk port.	physical
mode {static   lacp-passive   lacp-active}	Set the LACP mode. —Set to <code>static</code> for static aggregation. In this mode, no control messages are sent, and received control messages are ignored. —Set to <code>lacp-passive</code> to passively use LACP to negotiate 802.3ad aggregation. —Set to <code>lacp-active</code> to actively use LACP to negotiate 802.3ad aggregation.	lacp-active
members "<port>,<port>"	Set the aggregated LAG bundle interfaces.	No default
mclag enable	Enable or disable the MCLAG.	disable

## Configuring FortiSwitch split ports (phy-mode) in FortiLink mode

On FortiSwitch models that provide 40G/100G QSFP (quad small form-factor pluggable) interfaces, you can install a breakout cable to convert one 40G/100G interface into four 10G/25G interfaces. See the list of supported FortiSwitch models in the notes in this section.

FortiLink mode supports the FortiSwitch split-port configuration:

- [Configuring split ports on a previously discovered FortiSwitch unit on page 80](#)
- [Configuring split ports with a new FortiSwitch unit on page 80](#)
- [Configuring forward error correction on switch ports on page 80](#)
- [Configuring a split port on the FortiSwitch unit on page 81](#)

### Notes

- Splitting ports is not supported when a FortiSwitch unit is managed through layer 3.
- Split ports are not configured for pre-configured FortiSwitch units.
- Splitting ports is supported on the following FortiSwitch models:
  - FS-3032D (ports 5 to 28 are splittable)
  - FS-3032E (Ports can be split into 4 x 25G when configured in 100G QSFP28 mode or can be split into 4 x 10G when configured in 40G QSFP mode. Use the `set <port_name>-phy-mode disabled` command to disable some 100G ports to allow up to sixty-two 100G/25G/10G ports.)
  - FS-524D and FS-524D-FPOE (ports 29 and 30 are splittable)
  - FS-548D and FS-548D-FPOE (ports 53 and 54 are splittable)

- FS-1048E (In the 4 x 100G configuration, ports 49, 50, 51, and 52 are splittable as 4 x 25G. In the 6 x 40G configuration, ports 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54 are splittable as 4 x 10G.)

Use the `set port-configuration ?` command to check which ports are supported for each model.

- Currently, the maximum number of ports supported in software is 64 (including the management port). Therefore, only 10 QSFP ports can be split. This limitation applies to all of the models, but only the FS-3032D, FS-3032E, and the FS-1048E models have enough ports to encounter this limit.
- Use `10000full` for the general 10G interface configuration. If that setting does not work, use `10000cr` for copper connections (with copper cables such as 10GBASE-CR) or use `10000sr` for fiber connections (fiber optic transceivers such as 10GBASE-SR/LR/ER/ZR).

## Configuring split ports on a previously discovered FortiSwitch unit

1. On the FortiSwitch unit, configure the split ports. See [Configuring a split port on the FortiSwitch unit on page 81](#).
2. Restart the FortiSwitch unit.
3. Remove the FortiSwitch from being managed:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  delete <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
end
```

4. Discover the FortiSwitch unit.
5. Authorize the FortiSwitch unit.

## Configuring split ports with a new FortiSwitch unit

1. Discover the FortiSwitch unit.
2. Authorize the FortiSwitch unit.
3. Restart the FortiSwitch unit.
4. On the FortiSwitch unit, configure the split ports. See [Configuring a split port on the FortiSwitch unit on page 81](#).
5. Restart the FortiSwitch unit.
6. Remove the FortiSwitch from being managed:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  delete <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
end
```

7. Discover the FortiSwitch unit.
8. Authorize the FortiSwitch unit.

## Configuring forward error correction on switch ports

Supported managed-switch ports of the FS-1048E and FS-3032E can be configured with a forward error correction (FEC) state of Clause 74 FC-FEC for 25-Gbps ports and Clause 91 RS-FEC for 100-Gbps ports.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
```



```

        set fec-capable {0 | 1}
        set fec-state {disabled | c174 | c191}
    next
end
next
end

```

```
fec-capable {0 | 1}
```

Set whether the port is FEC capable.

- 0: The port is not FEC capable.
- 1: The port is FEC capable.

```
fec-state {disabled |
          c174 | c191}
```

Set the FEC state:

- disabled: Disable FEC on the port.
- c174: Enable Clause 74 FC-FEC. This option is only available for on FS-1048E and FS-3032E ports that have been split to 4x25G.
- c191: Enable Clause 91 RS-FEC. This option is only available for on FS-1048E and FS-3032E ports that have been split to 4x100G.

In this example, a FortiSwitch FS-3032E that is managed by a FortiGate device is configured with Clause 74 FC-FEC on port 16.1 and Clause 91 RS-FEC on port 8.

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit FS3E32T419000000
        config ports
            edit port16.1
                set fec-state c174
            next
            edit port8
                set fec-state c191
            next
        end
    next
end

```

## Configuring a split port on the FortiSwitch unit

### To configure a split port:

```

config switch phy-mode
    set port-configuration <default | disable-port54 | disable-port41-48 | 4x100G | 6x40G |
    4x4x25G>
    set {<port-name>-phy-mode <single-port | 4x25G | 4x10G | 4x1G | 2x50G>}
    ...
    (one entry for each port that supports split port)
end

```

The following settings are available:

- disable-port54—For 548D and 548D-FPOE, only port53 is splittable; port54 is unavailable.
- disable-port41-48—For 548D and 548D-FPOE, port41 to port48 are unavailable, but you can configure port53 and port54 in split-mode.
- 4x100G—For 1048E, enable the maximum speed (100G) of ports 49 through 52. Ports 53 and 54 are disabled.
- 6x40G—For 1048E, enable the maximum speed (40G) of ports 49 through 54.

- 4x4x25G—For 1048E, enable the maximum speed (100G) of ports 49 through 52; each split port has a maximum speed of 25G. Ports 47 and 48 are disabled.
- single-port—Use the port at the full base speed without splitting it.
- 4x25G—For 100G QSFP only, split one port into four subports of 25 Gbps each.
- 4x10G—For 40G or 100G QSFP only, split one port into four subports of 10Gbps each.
- 4x1G—For 40G or 100G QSFP only, split one port into four subports of 1 Gbps each.
- 2x50G—For 100G QSFP only, split one port into two subports of 50 Gbps each.

In the following example, a FortiSwitch 3032D is configured with ports 10, 14, and 28 set to 4x10G:

```
config switch phy-mode
  set port5-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port6-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port7-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port8-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port9-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port10-phy-mode 4x10G
  set port11-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port12-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port13-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port14-phy-mode 4x10G
  set port15-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port16-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port17-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port18-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port19-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port20-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port21-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port22-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port23-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port24-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port25-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port26-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port27-phy-mode 1x40G
  set port28-phy-mode 4x10G
end
```

The system applies the configuration only after you enter the `end` command, displaying the following message:

```
This change will cause a ports to be added and removed, this will cause loss of
configuration on removed ports. The system will have to reboot to apply this change.
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
```

**To configure one of the split ports, use the notation ".x" to specify the split port:**

```
config switch physical-port
  edit "port1"
    set lldp-profile "default-auto-isl"
    set speed 40000full
  next
  edit "port2"
    set lldp-profile "default-auto-isl"
    set speed 40000full
  next
  edit "port3"
    set lldp-profile "default-auto-isl"
    set speed 40000full
```

```
next
edit "port4"
    set lldp-profile "default-auto-isl"
    set speed 40000full
next
edit "port5.1"
    set speed 10000full
next
edit "port5.2"
    set speed 10000full
next
edit "port5.3"
    set speed 10000full
next
edit "port5.4"
    set speed 10000full
next
end
```

## Restricting the type of frames allowed through IEEE 802.1Q ports

You can now specify whether each FortiSwitch port discards tagged 802.1Q frames or untagged 802.1Q frames or allows all frames access to the port. By default, all frames have access to each FortiSwitch port.

Use the following CLI commands:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch <SN>
    config ports
        edit <port_name>
            set discard-mode <none | all-tagged | all-untagged>
        next
    next
end
```

## Multitenancy and VDOMs

This section covers the following topics:

- [FortiSwitch ports dedicated to VDOMs on page 83](#)
- [FortiSwitch VLANs from different VDOMs sharing the same FortiSwitch ports on page 86](#)

### FortiSwitch ports dedicated to VDOMs

Virtual domains (VDOMs) are a method of dividing a FortiGate unit into two or more virtual units that function as multiple independent units. VDOMs provide separate security domains that allow separate zones, user authentication, security policies, routing, and VPN configurations.

FortiSwitch ports can now be shared between VDOMs.

Starting in FortiOS 6.2.0, the following features are supported on FortiSwitch ports shared between VDOMs:

- POE pre-standard detection (on a per-port basis if the FortiSwitch model supports this feature)
- Learning limit for dynamic MAC addresses on ports, trunks, and VLANs (if the FortiSwitch unit supports this feature)
- QoS egress CoS queue policy (if the FortiSwitch unit supports this feature)
- Port security policy

**The following example shows how to share FortiSwitch ports between VDOMs:**

1. In the tenant VDOM named `bbb`, create a VLAN interface using the following CLI commands (not supported in the GUI):

```
FG5H0E3917900081 (bbb) #
config system interface
edit "bbb-vlan99"
set vdom "bbb"
set allowaccess ping
set device-identification enable
set role lan
set snmp-index 58
set switch-controller-dhcp-snooping enable
set interface "flink-lag" // this is the FortiLink interface in the root VDOM
set vlanid 99
next
end

config switch-controller global
set default-virtual-switch-vlan "bbb-vlan99"
end
```

2. Go back to the root VDOM. Pick a switch port to share between VDOMs, `port10` in this case.

```
FG5H0E3917900081 (vdom) # edit root
current vf=root:0
FG5H0E3917900081 (root) # config switch-controller managed-switch
FG5H0E3917900081 (managed-switch) # edit S548DF4K15000276
FG5H0E3917900081 (S548DF4K15000276) # config ports
FG5H0E3917900081 (ports) # edit port10
FG5H0E3917900081 (port10) # set export-to bbb
```

If you want to use the virtual-pool feature instead:

```
FG5H0E3917900081 (root) # config switch-controller virtual-port-pool
edit "bbb-pool"
set description "bbb-vlan-pool"
end

FG5H0E3917900081 (root) # config switch-controller managed-switch
FG5H0E3917900081 (managed-switch) # edit S548DF4K15000276
FG5H0E3917900081 (S548DF4K15000276) # config port
FG5H0E3917900081 (ports) # edit port11
FG5H0E3917900081 (port11) # set export-to-pool bbb-pool
```

3. Go back to the `bbb` VDOM to claim `port11` because it is in the virtual pool but not directly exported to the VDOM yet. (The administrator might want to pre-assign some ports in the tenant VDOM and let the tenant VDOM administrator

claim them before they are used.)

```
FG5H0E3917900081 (bbb) # execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool request
                           S548DF4K15000276 port11
FG5H0E3917900081 (bbb) # config switch-controller managed-switch // The switch port is
                           now in the bbb VDOM even though there is no FortiLink interface in the bbb VDOM.
FG5H0E3917900081 (managed-switch) # show
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit "S548DF4K15000276"
    set poe-detection-type 1
    set type virtual
    set owner-vdom "root"
    config ports
      edit "port10"
        set poe-capable 1
        set vlan "bbb-vlan99"
      next
      edit "port11"
        set poe-capable 1
        set vlan "bbb-vlan99"
      next
    end
  next
end
```

#### 4. Check your configuration on the root VDOM:

```
FG5H0E3917900081 (port10) # show
config ports
  edit "port10"
    set poe-capable 1
    set export-to "bbb"
  next
end

FG5H0E3917900081 (port11) # show
config ports
  edit "port11"
    set poe-capable 1
    set export-to-pool "bbb-pool"
    set export-to "bbb"
  next
end
```

#### 5. Check your configuration on the tenant VDOM:

```
FG5H0E3917900081 (ports) # show
config ports
  edit "port10"
    set poe-capable 1
    set vlan "bbb-vlan99"
  next
  edit "port11"
    set poe-capable 1
    set vlan "bbb-vlan99"
  next
```

end

You can create your own export tags using the following CLI commands:

```
config switch-controller switch-interface-tag
  edit <tag_name>
end
```

Use the following CLI command to list the contents of a specific VPP:

```
execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show-by-pool <VPP_name>
```

Use the following CLI command to list all VPPs and their contents:

```
execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show
```

**NOTE:** Shared ports do not support the following features:

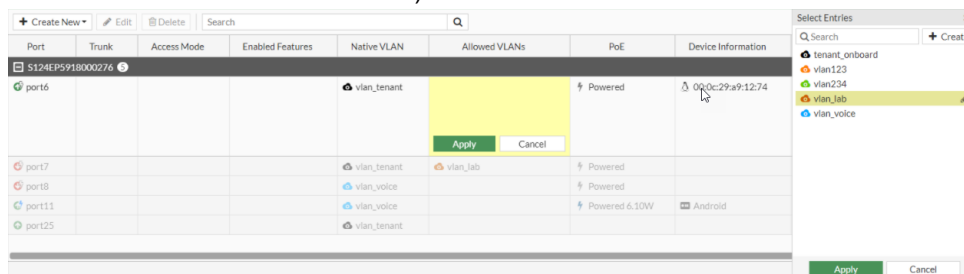
- LLDP
- STP
- BPDU guard
- Root guard
- DHCP snooping
- IGMP snooping
- MCLAG
- Quarantines

**NOTE:** After you export a switch port to a pool, if you need to export the switch port to a different pool, you need to exit/abort and then re-enter into the FortiSwitch CLI port configuration.

## FortiSwitch VLANs from different VDOMs sharing the same FortiSwitch ports

In this scenario, there is no administrative separation, and all FortiSwitch ports and VLANs are created and assigned by the administrator of the VDOM where the FortiSwitch unit is controlled, usually root.

1. From the root VDOM, create the FortiSwitch VLANs and assign them to their respective VDOMs.
2. From the CLI, assign the VLANs to the FortiSwitch ports. The assigned VLANs are displayed in the GUI (*WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports*) in the root VDOM.



**NOTE:** FortiSwitch units are not visible in non-root VDOMs.

## Configuring switching features

This section covers the following features:


















- [Configuring DHCP blocking, STP, and loop guard on managed FortiSwitch ports on page 87](#)
- [Configuring edge ports on page 88](#)
- [Configuring loop guard on page 89](#)
- [Configuring STP settings on page 89](#)
- [Dynamic MAC address learning on page 95](#)
- [Configuring storm control on page 99](#)
- [Configuring IGMP-snooping settings on page 100](#)
- [Configuring PTP transparent-clock mode on page 103](#)

### Configuring DHCP blocking, STP, and loop guard on managed FortiSwitch ports

Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports*. Right-click any port and then enable or disable the following features:

- **DHCP Snooping**—The DHCP blocking feature monitors the DHCP traffic from untrusted sources (for example, typically host ports and unknown DHCP servers) that might initiate traffic attacks or other hostile actions. To prevent this, DHCP blocking filters messages on untrusted ports.
- **Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)**—STP is a link-management protocol that ensures a loop-free layer-2 network topology.
- **Loop guard**—A loop in a layer-2 network results in broadcast storms that have far-reaching and unwanted effects. Fortinet loop guard helps to prevent loops. When loop guard is enabled on a switch port, the port monitors its subtending network for any downstream loops. The loop guard feature is designed to work in concert with STP rather than as a replacement for STP.
- **STP BPDU guard**—Similar to root guard, BPDU guard protects the designed network topology. When BPDU guard is enabled on STP edge ports, any BPDUs received cause the ports to go down for a specified number of minutes. The BPDUs are not forwarded, and the network edge is enforced.
- **STP root guard**—Root guard protects the interface on which it is enabled from becoming the path to root. When enabled on an interface, superior BPDUs received on that interface are ignored or dropped. Without using root guard, any switch that participates in STP maintains the ability to reroute the path to root. Rerouting might cause your network to transmit large amounts of traffic across suboptimal links or allow a malicious or misconfigured device to pose a security risk by passing core traffic through an insecure device for packet capture or inspection. By enabling root guard on multiple interfaces, you can create a perimeter around your existing paths to root to enforce the specified network topology.

STP and IGMP snooping are enabled on all ports by default. Loop guard is disabled by default on all ports.

 port1	 Edit	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port2	 Delete	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port3	 Edit Description	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port4	 Reset PoE	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port5	Status	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port6	Access Mode	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port7	PoE	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port8	DHCP Snooping	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port9	STP	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port10	Loop Guard	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port11	Edge Port	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port12	STP BPDU Guard	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol
 port13	STP Root Guard	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edge Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Spanning Tree Protocol

## Configuring edge ports

Use the following commands to enable or disable an interface as an edge port:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set edge-port {enable | disable}
      end
    end
  end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port1
        set edge-port enable
      end
    end
  end
```



## Configuring loop guard

A loop in a layer-2 network results in broadcast storms that have far-reaching and unwanted effects. Fortinet loop guard helps to prevent loops. When loop guard is enabled on a switch port, the port monitors its subtending network for any downstream loops. Loop guard and STP should be used separately for loop protection. By default, loop guard is disabled on all ports.

Use the following commands to configure loop guard on a FortiSwitch port:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set loop-guard {enabled | disabled}
        set loop-guard-timeout <0-120 minutes>
      end
    end
  end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port1
        set loop-guard enabled
        set loop-guard-timeout 10
      end
    end
  end
```

## Configuring STP settings

The managed FortiSwitch unit supports Spanning Tree Protocol (a link-management protocol that ensures a loop-free layer-2 network topology) as well as Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP), which is defined in the IEEE 802.1Q standard.

MSTP supports multiple spanning tree instances, where each instance carries traffic for one or more VLANs (the mapping of VLANs to instances is configurable). MSTP is backward-compatible with STP and Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP). A layer-2 network can contain switches that are running MSTP, STP, or RSTP. MSTP is built on RSTP, so it provides fast recovery from network faults and fast convergence times.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Configuring STP on FortiSwitch ports on page 90](#)
- [Configuring STP root guard on page 92](#)
- [Configuring STP BPDU guard on page 93](#)
- [Configuring interoperability with per-VLAN RSTP on page 94](#)

**To configure STP for all managed FortiSwitch units:**

```
config switch-controller stp-settings
  set name <name>
  set revision <stp revision>
  set hello-time <hello time>
```

```
set forward-time <forwarding delay>
set max-age <maximum aging time>
set max-hops <maximum number of hops>
end
```

### To override the global STP settings for a specific FortiSwitch unit:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
edit <switch-id>
config stp-settings
set local-override enable
end
```

### To configure MSTP instances:

```
config switch-controller stp-instance
edit <id>
config vlan-range <list of VLAN names>
end
config switch-controller managed-switch
edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
config stp-instance
edit <id>
set priority <0 | 4096 | 8192 | 12288 | 16384 | 20480 | 24576 | 28672 | 32768 |
36864 | 40960 | 45056 | 49152 | 53248 | 57344 | 61440>
next
end
next
end
```

### For example:

```
config switch-controller stp-instance
edit 1
config vlan-range vlan1 vlan2 vlan3
end
config switch-controller managed-switch
edit S524DF4K15000024
config stp-instance
edit 1
set priority 16384
next
end
next
end
```

## Configuring STP on FortiSwitch ports

Starting with FortiSwitch Release 3.4.2, STP is enabled by default for the non-FortiLink ports on the managed FortiSwitch units. STP is a link-management protocol that ensures a loop-free layer-2 network topology.

**NOTE:** STP is not supported between a FortiGate unit and a FortiSwitch unit in FortiLink mode.

Use the following commands to enable or disable STP on FortiSwitch ports:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

```

config ports
  edit <port_name>
    set stp-state {enabled | disabled}
  end
end

```

For example:

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port1
        set stp-state enabled
      end
    end
  end
end

```

To check the STP configuration on a FortiSwitch, use the following command:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info stp <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <instance_number>
```

For example:

```

FG100D3G15817028 # diagnose switch-controller switch-info stp S524DF4K15000024 0
MST Instance Information, primary-Channel:
Instance ID : 0
Switch Priority : 24576
Root MAC Address : 085b0ef195e4
Root Priority: 24576
Root Pathcost: 0
Regional Root MAC Address : 085b0ef195e4
Regional Root Priority: 24576
Regional Root Path Cost: 0
Remaining Hops: 20
This Bridge MAC Address : 085b0ef195e4
This bridge is the root

```

Port Loop Protection	Speed	Cost	Priority	Role	State	Edge	STP-Status
port1 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port2 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port3 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port4 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port5 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port6 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port7 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port8 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port9 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED

port10 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port11 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port12 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port13 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port14 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port15 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port16 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port17 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port18 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port19 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port20 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port21 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port22 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port23 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port25 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port26 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port27 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port28 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port29 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
port30 NO	-	200000000	128	DISABLED	DISCARDING	YES	ENABLED
internal NO	1G	20000	128	DESIGNATED	FORWARDING	YES	DISABLED
__FoRtI1LiNk0__ NO	1G	20000	128	DESIGNATED	FORWARDING	YES	DISABLED

## Configuring STP root guard

Root guard protects the interface on which it is enabled from becoming the path to root. When enabled on an interface, superior BPDUs received on that interface are ignored or dropped. Without using root guard, any switch that participates in STP maintains the ability to reroute the path to root. Rerouting might cause your network to transmit large amounts of traffic across suboptimal links or allow a malicious or misconfigured device to pose a security risk by passing core traffic through an insecure device for packet capture or inspection. By enabling root guard on multiple interfaces, you can create a perimeter around your existing paths to root to enforce the specified network topology.

Enable root guard on all ports that should not be root bridges. Do not enable root guard on the root port. You must have STP enabled to be able to use root guard.

Use the following commands to enable or disable STP root guard on FortiSwitch ports:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set stp-root-guard {enabled | disabled}
      end
    end
  end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port1
        set stp-root-guard enabled
      end
    end
  end
```

## Configuring STP BPDU guard

Similar to root guard, BPDU guard protects the designed network topology. When BPDU guard is enabled on STP edge ports, any BPDUs received cause the ports to go down for a specified number of minutes. The BPDUs are not forwarded, and the network edge is enforced.

There are two prerequisites for using BPDU guard:

- You must define the port as an edge port with the `set edge-port enable` command.
- You must enable STP on the switch interface with the `set stp-state enabled` command.

You can set how long the port will go down when a BPDU is received for a maximum of 120 minutes. The default port timeout is 5 minutes. If you set the timeout value to 0, the port will not go down when a BPDU is received, but you will have manually reset the port.

Use the following commands to enable or disable STP BPDU guard on FortiSwitch ports:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set stp-bpdu-guard {enabled | disabled}
        set stp-bpdu-guard-time <0-120>
      end
    end
  end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port1
        set stp-bpdu-guard enabled
        set stp-bpdu-guard-time 10
      end
    end
  end
```

To check the configuration of STP BPDU guard on a FortiSwitch unit, use the following command:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info bpdu-guard-status <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

For example:

```
FG100D3G15817028 # diagnose switch-controller switch-info bpdu-guard-status S524DF4K15000024
Managed Switch : S524DF4K15000024 0
```

Portname	State	Status	Timeout (m)	Count	Last-Event
port1	enabled	-	10	0	-
port2	disabled	-	-	-	-
port3	disabled	-	-	-	-
port4	disabled	-	-	-	-
port5	disabled	-	-	-	-
port6	disabled	-	-	-	-
port7	disabled	-	-	-	-
port8	disabled	-	-	-	-
port9	disabled	-	-	-	-
port10	disabled	-	-	-	-
port11	disabled	-	-	-	-
port12	disabled	-	-	-	-
port13	disabled	-	-	-	-
port14	disabled	-	-	-	-
port15	disabled	-	-	-	-
port16	disabled	-	-	-	-
port17	disabled	-	-	-	-
port18	disabled	-	-	-	-
port19	disabled	-	-	-	-
port20	disabled	-	-	-	-
port21	disabled	-	-	-	-
port22	disabled	-	-	-	-
port23	disabled	-	-	-	-
port25	disabled	-	-	-	-
port26	disabled	-	-	-	-
port27	disabled	-	-	-	-
port28	disabled	-	-	-	-
port29	disabled	-	-	-	-
port30	disabled	-	-	-	-
__FoRtI1LiNk0__	disabled	-	-	-	-

## Configuring interoperation with per-VLAN RSTP

Starting in FortiOS 6.4.2, managed FortiSwitch units can now interoperate with a network that is running RPVST+. The existing network's configuration can be maintained while adding managed FortiSwitch units as an extended region. By default, interoperation with RPVST+ is disabled.

When an MSTP domain is connected with an RPVST+ domain, FortiSwitch interoperation with the RPVST+ domain works in two ways:

- If the root bridge for the CIST is within an MSTP region, the boundary FortiSwitch unit of the MSTP region duplicates instance 0 information, creates one BPDU for every VLAN, and sends the BPDUs to the RPVST+ domain.

In this case, follow this rule: If the root bridge for the CIST is within an MSTP region, VLANs other than VLAN 1

defined in the RPVST+ domains must have their bridge priorities worse (numerically greater) than that of the CIST root bridge within MSTP region.

- If the root bridge for the CIST is within an RPVST+ domain, the boundary FortiSwitch unit processes only the VLAN 1 information received from the RPVST+ domain. The other BPDUs (VLANs 2 and above) sent from the connected RPVST+ domain are used only for consistency checks.

In this case, follow this rule: If the root bridge for the CIST is within the RPVST+ domain, the root bridge priority of VLANs other than VLAN 1 within that domain must be better (numerically less) than that of VLAN 1.

### To configure interoperation with RPVST+:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set rpvt-port {enabled | disabled}
      next
    end
```

For example:

```
FGT-1 (testvdom) # config switch-controller managed-switch
FGT-1 (managed-switch) # edit FS3E32T419000006
FGT-1 (FS3E32T419000006) # config ports
FGT-1 (ports) # edit port5
FGT-1 (port5) # set rpvt-port enabled
FGT-1 (port5) # next
FGT-1 (ports) # end
```



A maximum of 16 VLANs is supported; the maximum number of VLANs includes native VLANs. You must configure the same VLANs as those used in the RPVST+ domain.

---

### To check your configuration and to diagnose any problems:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info rpvt <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
```

For example:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info rpvt FS3E32T419000006 port5
```

## Dynamic MAC address learning

You can enable or disable dynamic MAC address learning on a port or VLAN. The existing dynamic MAC entries are flushed when you change this setting. If you disable MAC address learning, you can set the behavior for an incoming packet with an unknown MAC address (to drop or forward the packet).

This section covers the following topics:

- [Limiting the number of learned MAC addresses on a FortiSwitch interface on page 96](#)
- [Controlling how long learned MAC addresses are saved on page 97](#)
- [Logging violations of the MAC address learning limit on page 97](#)
- [Persistent \(sticky\) MAC addresses on page 98](#)
- [Logging changes to MAC addresses on page 98](#)

## Limiting the number of learned MAC addresses on a FortiSwitch interface

You can limit the number of MAC addresses learned on a FortiSwitch interface (port or VLAN). The limit ranges from 1 to 128. If the limit is set to the default value zero, there is no learning limit.

**NOTE:** Static MAC addresses are not counted in the limit. The limit refers only to learned MAC addresses.

Use the following CLI commands to limit MAC address learning on a VLAN:

```
config switch vlan
  edit <integer>
    set switch-controller-learning-limit <limit>
  end
end
```

For example:

```
config switch vlan
  edit 100
    set switch-controller-learning-limit 20
  end
end
```

Use the following CLI commands to limit MAC address learning on a port:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set learning-limit <limit>
      next
    end
  end
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port3
        set learning-limit 50
      next
    end
  end
end
```



## Controlling how long learned MAC addresses are saved

You can change how long learned MAC addresses are stored. By default, each learned MAC address is aged out after 300 seconds. After this amount of time, the inactive MAC address is deleted from the FortiSwitch hardware. The value ranges from 10 to 1000,000 seconds. Set the value to 0 to disable MAC address aging.

```
config switch-controller global
    set mac-aging-interval <10 to 1000000>
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller global
    set mac-aging-interval 500
end
```

If the mac-aging-interval is disabled by being set to 0, you can still control when inactive MAC addresses are removed from the FortiSwitch hardware. By default, inactive MAC addresses are removed after 24 hours. The value ranges from 0 to 168 hours. Set the value to 0 to use the mac-retention-period setting to control when inactive MAC addresses are deleted.

```
config switch-controller global
    set mac-retention-period <0 to 168>
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller global
    set mac-retention-period 36
end
```

## Logging violations of the MAC address learning limit

If you want to see the first MAC address that exceeded the learning limit for an interface or VLAN, you can enable the learning-limit violation log for a managed FortiSwitch unit. Only one violation is recorded per interface or VLAN.

By default, logging is disabled. The most recent violation that occurred on each interface or VLAN is recorded in the system log. After that, no more violations are logged until the log is reset for the triggered interface or VLAN. Only the most recent 128 violations are displayed in the console.

Use the following commands to control the learning-limit violation log and to control how long learned MAC addresses are saved:

```
config switch-controller global
    set mac-violation-timer <0-1500>
    set log-mac-limit-violations {enable | disable}
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller global
    set mac-violation-timer 1000
    set log-mac-limit-violations enable
end
```

To view the content of the learning-limit violation log for a managed FortiSwitch unit, use one of the following commands:

- `diagnose switch-controller switch-info mac-limit-violations all <FortiSwitch_serial_number>`

- `diagnose switch-controller switch-info mac-limit-violations interface <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>`
- `diagnose switch-controller switch-info mac-limit-violations vlan <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <VLAN_ID>`

For example, to set the learning-limit violation log for VLAN 5 on a managed FortiSwitch unit:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info mac-limit-violations vlan S124DP3XS12345678 5
```

To reset the learning-limit violation log for a managed FortiSwitch unit, use one of the following commands:

- `execute switch-controller mac-limit-violation reset all <FortiSwitch_serial_number>`
- `execute switch-controller mac-limit-violation reset vlan <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <VLAN_ID>`
- `execute switch-controller mac-limit-violation reset interface <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>`

For example, to clear the learning-limit violation log for port 5 of a managed FortiSwitch unit:

```
execute switch-controller mac-limit-violation reset interface S124DP3XS12345678 port5
```

## Persistent (sticky) MAC addresses

You can make dynamically learned MAC addresses persistent when the status of a FortiSwitch port changes (goes down or up). By default, MAC addresses are not persistent.

Use the following commands to configure the persistence of MAC addresses on an interface:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set sticky-mac {enable | disable}
      next
    end
```

You can also save persistent MAC addresses to the FortiSwitch configuration file so that they are automatically loaded when the FortiSwitch unit is rebooted. By default, persistent entries are lost when a FortiSwitch unit is rebooted. Use the following commands to save persistent MAC addresses for a specific interface or all interfaces:

```
execute switch-controller switch-action sticky-mac save interface <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
execute switch-controller switch-action sticky-mac save all <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

Use one of the following commands to delete the persistent MAC addresses instead of saving them in the FortiSwitch configuration file:

```
execute switch-controller switch-action sticky-mac delete-unsaved all <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
execute switch-controller switch-action sticky-mac delete-unsaved interface <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
```

## Logging changes to MAC addresses

Use the following commands to create syslog entries for when MAC addresses are learned, aged out, and removed:

```
config switch-controller global
  set mac-event-logging enable
```

```
end
```

## Configuring storm control

Storm control uses the data rate (packets/sec, default 500) of the link to measure traffic activity, preventing traffic on a LAN from being disrupted by a broadcast, multicast, or unicast storm on a port.

When the data rate exceeds the configured threshold, storm control drops excess traffic. You can configure the types of traffic to drop: broadcast, unknown unicast, or multicast. By default, these three types of traffic are not dropped.

To configure storm control for all switch ports (including both FortiLink ports and non-FortiLink ports) on the managed switches, use the following FortiOS CLI commands:

```
config switch-controller storm-control
    set rate <rate>
    set unknown-unicast {enable | disable}
    set unknown-multicast {enable | disable}
    set broadcast {enable | disable}
end
```

To configure storm control for a FortiSwitch port, use the FortiOS CLI to select the override storm-control-mode in the storm-control policy and then assigning the storm-control policy for the FortiSwitch port.

```
config switch-controller storm-control-policy
    edit <storm_control_policy_name>
        set description <description_of_the_storm_control_policy>
        set storm-control-mode override
        set rate <1-10000000 or 0 to drop all packets>
        set unknown-unicast {enable | disable}
        set unknown-multicast {enable | disable}
        set broadcast {enable | disable}
    next
end

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
        config ports
            edit port5
                set storm-control-policy <storm_control_policy_name>
            next
        end
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller storm-control-policy
    edit stormpoll
        set description "storm control policy for port 5"
        set storm-control-mode override
        set rate 1000
        set unknown-unicast enable
        set unknown-multicast enable
        set broadcast enable
    next
end
```

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
edit S524DF4K15000024
config ports
edit port5
set storm-control-policy stormpoll
next
end
```

## Configuring IGMP-snooping settings

You need to configure global IGMP-snooping settings and IGMP-snooping settings on a FortiSwitch unit before configuring the IGMP-snooping proxy and IGMP-snooping querier.



You cannot use IGMP snooping when network access control (NAC) has been enabled on a global scale with `set mode global` under the `config switch-controller nac-settings` command.

---

This section covers the following topics:

- [Configuring global IGMP-snooping settings on page 100](#)
- [Configuring IGMP-snooping settings on a switch on page 100](#)
- [Configuring the IGMP-snooping proxy on page 101](#)
- [Configuring the IGMP-snooping querier on page 102](#)

## Configuring global IGMP-snooping settings

Use the following commands to configure the global IGMP-snooping settings.

Aging time is the maximum number of seconds that the system will retain a multicast snooping entry. Enter an integer value from 15 to 3600. The default value is 300.

The `flood-unknown-multicast` setting controls whether the system will flood unknown multicast messages within the VLAN.

Starting in FortiOS 7.0.8, use the FortiOS CLI to specify how often the managed FortiSwitch unit will send IGMP version-2 queries when the IGMP-snooping querier is configured. By default, queries are sent every 125 seconds. The value for `aging-time` must be greater than the value for `query-interval`.

```
config switch-controller igmp-snooping
set aging-time <15-3600>
set flood-unknown-multicast {enable | disable}
set query-interval <10-1200>
end
```

## Configuring IGMP-snooping settings on a switch

IGMP snooping allows the FortiSwitch to passively listen to the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) network traffic between hosts and routers. The switch uses this information to determine which ports are interested in receiving

each multicast feed. FortiSwitch can reduce unnecessary multicast traffic on the LAN by pruning multicast traffic from links that do not contain a multicast listener.

**NOTE:** When an inter-switch link (ISL) is formed automatically in FortiLink mode, the `igmp-snooping-flood-reports` and `mcast-snooping-flood-traffic` options are disabled by default.

Use the following commands to configure IGMP settings on a FortiSwitch port:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set igmp-snooping-flood-reports {enable | disable}
        set mcast-snooping-flood-traffic {enable | disable}
      end
    end
  end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port3
        set igmp-snooping-flood-reports enable
        set mcast-snooping-flood-traffic enable
      end
    end
  end
```

## Configuring the IGMP-snooping proxy

Before FortiOS 7.0.2, you could use the CLI to enable IGMP proxy on a system-wide basis. Starting in FortiOS 7.0.2, you can use the CLI to enable IGMP proxy per FortiSwitch unit.

By default, IGMP snooping is disabled. You need to enable IGMP snooping on the FortiGate device before you can enable the IGMP-snooping proxy.

**To enable IGMP snooping and the IGMP-snooping proxy:**

```
config system interface
  edit <VLAN_interface>
    set switch-controller-igmp-snooping enable
    set switch-controller-igmp-snooping-proxy enable
  next
end
```

For example, you can enable IGMP snooping and the IGMP-snooping proxy on VLAN 100:

```
config system interface
  edit vlan100
    set switch-controller-igmp-snooping enable
    set switch-controller-igmp-snooping-proxy enable
  next
end
```

## Configuring the IGMP-snooping querier

Starting in FortiOS 7.0.2, you can configure the IGMP-snooping querier version 2 or 3. When the IGMP querier version 2 is configured, the managed FortiSwitch unit will send IGMP version-2 queries when no external querier is present. When the IGMP querier version 3 is configured, the managed FortiSwitch unit will send IGMP version-3 queries when no external querier is present.

If you have IGMP snooping and the IGMP-snooping proxy enabled on a VLAN, you can then configure the IGMP-snooping querier on the same VLAN on a managed switch. By default, the IGMP-snooping querier is disabled.

You must enable the overriding of the global IGMP-snooping configuration with the `set local-override enable` command.

By default, the maximum time (`aging-time`) that multicast snooping entries without any packets are kept is for 300 seconds. This value can be in the range of 15-3,600 seconds.

By default, `flood-unknown-multicast` is disabled, and unregistered multicast packets are forwarded only to mRouter ports. If you enable `flood-unknown-multicast`, unregistered multicast packets are forwarded to all ports in the VLAN.

The IGMP-snooping proxy uses the global IGMP-snooping configuration by default. You can enable or disable the IGMP-snooping on the VLAN.

You can optionally specify the IPv4 address that IGMP reports are sent to. You can also set the IGMP-snooping querier version. The default IGMP querier version is 2.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
  config igmp-snooping
    set local-override enable
    set aging-time <15-3600>
    set flood-unknown-multicast {enable | disable}
  config vlans
    edit <VLAN_interface>
      set proxy {disable | enable | global}
      set querier enable
      set querier-addr <IPv4_address>
      set version {2 | 3}
    next
  end
end
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
  config igmp-snooping
    set local-override enable
    set aging-time 1000
    set flood-unknown-multicast enable
  config vlans
    edit vlan100
      set proxy disable
      set querier enable
      set querier-addr 1.2.3.4
      set version 3
    next
  end
end
```

```
    end
  end
end
```

## Configuring PTP transparent-clock mode

Use the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) transparent-clock mode to measure the overall path delay for packets in a network to improve the time precision. There are two transparent-clock modes:

- End-to-end measures the path delay for the entire path
- Peer-to-peer measures the path delay between each pair of nodes

Use the following steps to configure PTP transparent-clock mode:

1. Configure the global PTP settings.  
By default, PTP is disabled.
2. Enable the PTP policy.  
By default, the PTP policy is enabled.
3. Apply the PTP policy to a port.  
**NOTE:** PTP policies are hidden on virtual ports

### To configure the global PTP settings:

```
config switch-controller ptp settings
  set mode {disable | transparent-e2e | transparent-p2p}
end
```

### To enable the PTP policy:

```
config switch-controller ptp policy
  edit {default | <policy_name>}
    set status {enable | disable}
  next
end
```

### To apply the PTP policy to a port:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set ptp-policy {default | <policy_name>}
      end
    end
  end
```

### For example:

```
config switch-controller ptp settings
  set mode transparent-p2p
end

config switch-controller ptp policy
  edit ptppolicy1
```

```
        set status enable
    next
end

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S524DF4K15000024
        config ports
            edit port5
                set ptp-policy ptppolicy1
            end
        end
    end
end
```



## Device detection

This section covers the following topics:

- [Enabling network-assisted device detection on page 105](#)
- [Voice device detection on page 105](#)
- [Configuring IoT detection on page 112](#)
- [Configuring LLDP-MED settings on page 113](#)

### Enabling network-assisted device detection

Network-assisted device detection allows the FortiGate unit to use the information about connected devices detected by the managed FortiSwitch unit.

To enable network-assisted device detection on a VDOM:

```
config switch-controller network-monitor-settings
    set network-monitoring enable
end
```

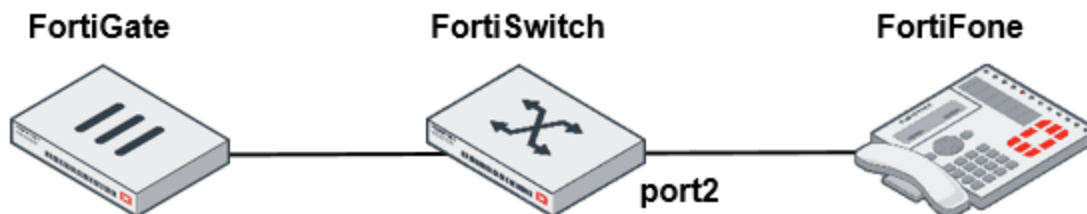
You can display a list of detected devices from the *Device Inventory* menu in the GUI. To list the detected devices in the CLI, enter the following command:

```
diagnose user device list
```

### Voice device detection

FortiSwitchOS is able to parse LLDP messages from voice devices such as FortiFone and pass this information to a FortiGate device for device detection. You can use a dynamic port policy to assign a device to an LLDP profile, QoS policy, and VLAN policy. When a detected device is matched to the dynamic port policy, the corresponding policy actions are applied on the switch port.

In the following example, FortiFone is connected to port2 of the FortiSwitch unit. A dynamic port policy is created to apply a VLAN policy, LLDP policy, and QoS policy to the device family FortiFone.



The following is a summary of the procedure:

1. Use the FortiGate CLI to configure the VLAN policy, LLDP profile, and Quality of Service (QoS) policy. You can use the predefined `voice-qos` policy for QoS and the predefined `fortivoice.fortilink` profile for LLDP.

2. Use the FortiGate GUI to configure a dynamic port policy to match the FortiFone device family with the actions from the assigned LLDP profile, QoS policy, and VLAN policy.
3. Use the FortiGate GUI to assign the dynamic port policy to the FortiSwitch port.

**To create a dynamic port policy in the GUI and then assign it to a FortiSwitch port:**

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Port Policies* and click *Dynamic Port Policies*.
  - a. Click *Create New* to create a dynamic port policy.
  - b. In the *Name* field, enter *FortiFone*.

The screenshot shows the FortiGate GUI interface for creating a dynamic port policy. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with the following items: FGT\_Switch\_Controller, Dashboard, Network, Policy & Objects, Security Profiles, VPN, User & Authentication, WiFi & Switch Controller (expanded), Managed FortiAPs, WiFi Clients, WiFi Maps, SSIDs, FortiAP Profiles, WIDS Profiles, FortiLink Interface, Managed FortiSwitches, FortiSwitch VLANs, FortiSwitch Ports, FortiSwitch Port Policies (highlighted), NAC Policies, System, and Security Fabric. The main content area is titled 'Create Dynamic Port Policy'. It features a 'Name' field with the value 'FortiFone' and a 'Description' field. Below these is a 'Policy Information' section containing a table with columns: Name, Patterns, Assign, and Matched Devices. The table is currently empty, displaying 'No results'. At the bottom right of the table, it says 'Updated: 19:07:46'. The bottom of the window has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- c. Click *Create new* to create a dynamic port policy rule.
- d. In the *Name* field, enter *FortiFone*.
- e. Disable *MAC address*.
- f. Enable *Device family* and enter *FortiFone*.
- g. Enable *LLDP profile* and select a voice profile.
- h. Enable *QoS policy* and select a voice policy.

- i. Enable *VLAN policy* and select a voice policy.

### Create Dynamic Port Policy Rule

Name

Status Enabled Disabled

Description  0/63

#### Device Patterns

MAC address ☐

Host ☐

Device family ☒

Type ☐

#### Switch Controller Action

LLDP profile ☒ LLDP

QoS policy ☒ QoS

802.1X policy ☐

VLAN policy ☒ VLAN Policy

OK Cancel

- j. Click **OK** to save the dynamic port policy rule.

The screenshot shows the FortiOS interface for configuring a dynamic port policy. The left sidebar is expanded, showing the 'FortiSwitch Port Policies' menu item. The main content area is titled 'Create Dynamic Port Policy'. It includes a form for 'Name' (FortiFone) and 'Description' (0/63). Below this is the 'Policy Information' section, which contains a table with the following data:

Name	Patterns	Assign	Matched Devices
FortiFone	Device Family: FortiFone	LLDP: fortivoice.fortilink QoS: voice-qos VLAN Policy: fon	

At the bottom right of the form, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. The status bar at the bottom indicates 'Updated: 19:09:20'.

- k. Click **OK** to save the dynamic port policy.

2. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports**.

3. Right-click *port2* and select *Mode > Assign Port Policy*.

FGT\_Switch\_Controller

Dashboard
Network
Policy & Objects
Security Profiles
VPN
User & Authentication
**WiFi & Switch Controller**
Managed FortiAPs
WiFi Clients
WiFi Maps
SSIDs
FortiAP Profiles
WIDS Profiles
FortiLink Interface
Managed FortiSwitches
FortiSwitch VLANs
**FortiSwitch Ports**
FortiSwitch Port Policies
NAC Policies
System
Security Fabric
Log & Report

Create New

Edit

Delete

Search

Port	Trunk	Mode	Port Policy	Native VLAN	Allowed VLANs
+ ACCESS1 - S108DVUBYKEFGG54 8					
+ CORE1 - S108DVHFUKEFGG54 8					
+ CORE2 - S108DVSPUKEFGG54 8					
+ RING1 - S108DVKJSKEFGG54 8					
+ RING2 - S108DVXZKEFGG54 8					
- RING3 - S108DVIJAK1VGG54 8					
+ port1		Static		✖ block_intra	✖ quarantine.fortilink (quaranti
+ port2		Static		✖ default_10.fortilink (default_10)	✖ quarantine.fortilink (quaranti
+ port3		Static		✖ default_10.fortilink (default_10)	✖ quarantine.fortilink (quaranti
+ port4		Static		✖ default_10.fortilink (default_10)	✖ quarantine.fortilink (quaranti
+ port5		Static		Static	A port policy must be set when this setting is selected. i
+ port6		Static		Assign Port Policy	link (default_10) ✖ quarantine.fortilink (quaranti
+ port7		Static		NAC	
+ port8		Static		S108DVXZKEFGG54	

Edit

Delete

Edit Description

Reset PoE

Mode

Status

PoE

DHCP Snooping

STP

Loop Guard

Edge Port

STP BPDU Guard

STP Root Guard

- Click the pencil icon in the Port Policy column, select the *FortiFone* dynamic port policy, and then click *Apply*.

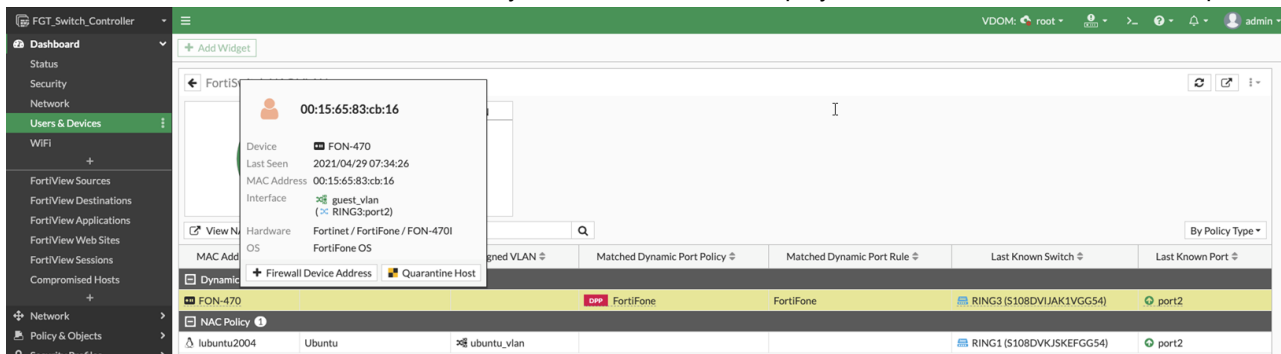
The screenshot shows the FortiGate GUI with the following details:

- Left Sidebar:**
  - FGT\_Switch\_Controller
  - Dashboard
  - Network
  - Policy & Objects
  - Security Profiles
  - VPN
  - User & Authentication
  - WiFi & Switch Controller**
    - Managed FortiAPs
    - WiFi Clients
    - WiFi Maps
    - SSIDs
    - FortiAP Profiles
    - WIDS Profiles
    - FortiLink Interface
    - Managed FortiSwitches
    - FortiSwitch VLANs
    - FortiSwitch Ports** (selected)
- Main Content Area:**
  - Buttons: + Create New, Edit, Delete, Search
  - Table Headers: Port, Trunk, Mode, Port Policy, Native VLAN, Allowed VLANs, Device Information, DHCP Snooping
  - Table Rows:
    - ACCESS1 - S108DVUBYKEFGG54
    - CORE1 - S108DVHFUKEFGG54
    - CORE2 - S108DVSUKEFGG54
    - RING1 - S108DVKSKEFGG54
    - RING2 - S108DVXZKEFGG54
    - RING3 - S108DVJAK1VGG54
  - Port Configuration Table:

Port	Mode	Port Policy	Allowed VLANs	Device Information	DHCP Snooping
port1	Static	block_intra	quarantine.fortilink (quarantine)	FC-HOST3 1e:09:00:00:38:01 1e:ff:ff:00:00:28	Untrusted
port2	Assign Port Policy	default_10.fortilink (default_10)	quarantine.fortilink (quarantine)	FON-470 host4 1e:09:00:00:3c:01 1e:ff:ff:00:00:2c	Untrusted
port3	Static	default_10.fortilink (default_10)	quarantine.fortilink (quarantine)	1e:09:0f:00:00:1f	Untrusted
port4	Static	default_10.fortilink (default_10)	quarantine.fortilink (quarantine)	1e:09:0f:00:00:20	Untrusted

5. Plug the FortiFone into port2 of the FortiSwitch unit.

6. Go to **Dashboard > Users & Devices** and verify that the FortiFone is displayed in the **FortiSwitch NAC VLANs** pane.



### To configure voice device detection in the CLI:

1. Use the FortiGate CLI to configure the VLAN policy, LLDP profile, and QoS policy.

```
config switch-controller lldp-profile
edit "fortivoice.fortilink"
set med-tlvs inventory-management network-policy location-identification
set auto-isl disable
config med-network-policy
edit "voice"
set status enable
set vlan-intf "voice"
set assign-vlan enable
set dscp 46
next
edit "voice-signaling"
set status enable
set vlan-intf "voice"
set assign-vlan enable
set dscp 46
next
edit "guest-voice"
next
edit "guest-voice-signaling"
next
edit "softphone-voice"
next
edit "video-conferencing"
next
edit "streaming-video"
next
edit "video-signaling"
next
end
config med-location-service
edit "coordinates"
next
edit "address-civic"
next
edit "elin-number"
next
end
```

```
    next
end

config switch-controller qos qos-policy
    edit "voice-qos"
        set trust-dot1p-map "voice-dot1p"
        set trust-ip-dscp-map "voice-dscp"
        set queue-policy "voice-egress"
    next
end

config switch-controller vlan-policy
    edit "fon"
        set fortilink "fortilink"
        set vlan "default_10"
        set allowed-vlans "quarantine" "voice"
        set untagged-vlans "quarantine"
    next
end
```

2. Configure a dynamic port policy to match the FortiFone device family with the actions from the assigned LLDP profile, QoS policy, and VLAN policy.

```
config switch-controller dynamic-port-policy
    edit "FortiFone"
        set fortilink "fortilink"
        config policy
            edit "FortiFone"
                set family "FortiFone"
                set lldp-profile "fortivoice.fortilink"
                set qos-policy "voice-qos"
                set vlan-policy "fon"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Assign the dynamic port policy to port2 of the FortiSwitch unit.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S108DVIJAK1VGG54
        config ports
            edit "port2"
                set vlan "default_10"
                set allowed-vlans "quarantine"
                set untagged-vlans "quarantine"
                set access-mode dynamic
                set port-policy "FortiFone"
                set export-to "root"
                set mac-addr 02:09:0f:00:2c:01
            next
        end
    end
```

4. The FortiSwitch unit receives an LLDP message from FortiFone after it is plugged into port2.
5. Run the `diagnose switch-controller mac-device dynamic` command to check the device information on FortiGate device. The FortiFone is identified.

```
FGT_Switch_Controller (root) # diagnose switch-controller mac-device dynamic
Vdom: root
MAC                LAST-KNOWN-SWITCH  LAST-KNOWN-PORT  DYNAMIC-PORT-POLICY  POLICY
                LAST-SEEN      COMMENTS
00:15:65:83:cb:16  S108DVIJAK1VGG54  port2            FortiFone
FortiFone          148              auto detected @ 2021-04-29 19:12:42
```

## Configuring IoT detection

**NOTE:** This feature requires an IoT Detection Service license.

Starting in FortiOS 6.4, FortiSwitch units can use a new FortiGuard service to identify Internet of things (IoT) devices. FortiOS can use the identified devices for storage and display. You can use the FortiOS CLI to configure IoT detection.

Each detected MAC address of an IoT device has a confidence level assigned to it. If the confidence level is less than the `iot-weight-threshold` value, the MAC address is scanned. The default value is 1. Set the `iot-weight-threshold` value to 0 to disable IoT detection.

You can control how often a FortiSwitch unit scans for IoT devices. The range of values is 2 to 10,080 minutes. By default, the scan interval is 60 minutes. Every MAC address will be scanned for a time interval of 60 minutes followed by 60 minutes when it will not be scanned. The start time of every MAC address's 60-minute scan interval is unique. Set the `iot-scan-interval` value to 0 to disable IoT detection.

A MAC address of an IoT device must be detected by the FortiSwitch unit for more than a specified number of minutes before the MAC address is passed along to the FortiGuard service for IoT identification. The default number of minutes is 5. The range of values is 0 to 10,080 minutes. Set the `iot-holdoff` value to 0 to disable this setting.

If a MAC address entry's last-seen time is greater than the `iot-mac-idle` value, the MAC address entry is not considered for IoT detection. By default, the `iot-mac-idle` value is 1,440 minutes. The range of values is 0 to 10,080 minutes.

### To configure system-wide settings for IoT detection:

```
config switch-controller system
  set iot-weight-threshold <0-255>
  set iot-scan-interval <2-10080>
  set iot-holdoff <0-10080>
  set iot-mac-idle <0-10080>
end
```

Starting in FortiOS 6.4.3, IoT detection can be managed per FortiLink interface as well. IoT detection is disabled by default on the FortiLink interface. Use the FortiOS CLI or GUI to enable IoT detection on the FortiLink interface so that the FortiSwitch unit starts scanning for IoT devices.

### Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiLink Interface*.
2. Enable *IoT scanning*.



**Using the CLI:**

```
config system interface
  edit <FortiLink_interface>
    set switch-controller-iot-scanning enable
  end
```

## Configuring LLDP-MED settings

Starting in FortiOS 6.4.0 and FortiSwitchOS 6.4.0, LLDP neighbor devices are dynamically detected. By default, this feature is enabled in FortiOS but disabled in managed FortiSwitch units. Dynamic detection must be enabled in both FortiOS and FortiSwitchOS for this feature to work.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Creating LLDP asset tags for each managed FortiSwitch on page 115](#)
- [Adding media endpoint discovery \(MED\) to an LLDP configuration on page 116](#)
- [Displaying LLDP information on page 116](#)
- [Configuring the LLDP settings on page 117](#)

**To configure LLDP profiles in FortiOS:**

```
config switch-controller lldp-profile
  edit <profile_name>
    set med-tlvs (inventory-management | network-policy | power-management | location-
      identification)
    set 802.1-tlvs port-vlan-id
    set 802.3-tlvs {max-frame-size | power-negotiation}
    set auto-isl {enable | disable}
    set auto-isl-hello-timer <1-30>
    set auto-isl-port-group <0-9>
    set auto-isl-receive-timeout <3-90>
    config med-network-policy
      edit {guest-voice | guest-voice-signaling | softphone-voice | streaming-video |
        video-conferencing | video-signaling | voice | voice-signaling}
      set status {enable | disable}
      set vlan-intf <string>
      set priority <0-7>
      set dscp <0-63>
    next
  end
  config med-location-service
    edit {address-civic | coordinates | elin-number}
    set status {enable | disable}
    set sys-location-id <string>
  next
end
config-tlvs
  edit <TLV_name>
    set oui <hexadecimal_number>
    set subtype <0-255>
    set information-string <0-507>
  next
```

```

    end
  next
end

```

Variable	Description
<profile_name>	Enable or disable
med-tlvs (inventory-management   network-policy   power-management   location-identification)	Select which LLDP-MED type-length-value descriptions (TLVs) to transmit: inventory-management TLVs, network-policy TLVs, power-management TLVs for PoE, and location-identification TLVs. You can select one or more option. Separate multiple options with a space.
802.1-tlvs port-vlan-id	Transmit the IEEE 802.1 port native-VLAN TLV.
802.3-tlvs {max-frame-size   power-negotiation}	Select whether to transmit the IEEE 802.3 maximum frame size TLV, the power-negotiation TLV for PoE, or both. Separate multiple options with a space.
auto-isl {enable   disable}	Enable or disable the automatic inter-switch LAG.
auto-isl-hello-timer <1-30>	If you enabled auto-isl, you can set the number of seconds for the automatic inter-switch LAG hello timer. The default value is 3 seconds.
auto-isl-port-group <0-9>	If you enabled auto-isl, you can set the automatic inter-switch LAG port group identifier.
auto-isl-receive-timeout <3-90>	If you enabled auto-isl, you can set the number of seconds before the automatic inter-switch LAG times out if no response is received. The default value is 9 seconds.
<b>config med-network-policy</b>	
{guest-voice   guest-voice-signaling   softphone-voice   streaming-video   video-conferencing   video-signaling   voice   voice-signaling}	Select which Media Endpoint Discovery (MED) network policy type-length-value (TLV) category to edit.
status {enable   disable}	Enable or disable whether this TLV is transmitted.
vlan-intf <string>	If you enabled the status, you can enter the VLAN interface to advertise. The maximum length is 15 characters.
priority <0-7>	If you enabled the status, you can enter the advertised Layer-2 priority. Set to 7 for the highest priority.
dscp <0-63>	If you enabled the status, you can enter the advertised Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value to indicate the level of service requested for the traffic.
<b>config med-location-service</b>	
{address-civic   coordinates   elin-number}	Select which Media Endpoint Discovery (MED) location type-length-value (TLV) category to edit.
status {enable   disable}	Enable or disable whether this TLV is transmitted.

Variable	Description
sys-location-id <string>	If you enabled the status, you can enter the location service identifier. The maximum length is 63 characters.
<b>config-tlvs</b>	
<TLV_name>	Enter the name of a custom TLV entry.
oui <hexadecimal_number>	Enter the organizationally unique identifier (OUI), a 3-byte hexadecimal number, for this TLV.
subtype <0-255>	Enter the organizationally defined subtype.
information-string <0-507>	Enter the organizationally defined information string in hexadecimal bytes.

### To configure LLDP settings in FortiOS:

```
config switch-controller lldp-settings
    set tx-hold <int>
    set tx-interval <int>
    set fast-start-interval <int>
    set management-interface {internal | management}
    set device-detection {enable | disable}
end
```

Variable	Description
tx-hold	Number of tx-intervals before the local LLDP data expires. Therefore, the packet TTL (in seconds) is <b>tx-hold</b> times <b>tx-interval</b> . The range for tx-hold is 1 to 16, and the default value is 4.
tx-interval	How often the FortiSwitch transmits the LLDP PDU. The range is 5 to 4095 seconds, and the default is 30 seconds.
fast-start-interval	How often the FortiSwitch transmits the first 4 LLDP packets when a link comes up. The range is 2 to 5 seconds, and the default is 2 seconds. Set this variable to zero to disable fast start.
management-interface	Primary management interface to be advertised in LLDP and CDP PDUs.
device-detection {enable   disable}	Enable or disable whether LLDP neighbor devices are dynamically detected. By default, this setting is disabled.

### To configure dynamic detection of LLDP neighbor devices in FortiSwitchOS:

```
config switch lldp settings
    set device-detection enable
end
```

## Creating LLDP asset tags for each managed FortiSwitch

You can use the following commands to add an LLDP asset tag for a managed FortiSwitch:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
```

```
edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    set switch-device-tag <string>
end
```

## Adding media endpoint discovery (MED) to an LLDP configuration

You can use the following commands to add media endpoint discovery (MED) features to an LLDP profile:

```
config switch-controller lldp-profile
    edit <lldp-profile>
        config med-network-policy
            edit guest-voice
                set status {disable | enable}
            next
            edit guest-voice-signaling
                set status {disable | enable}
            next
            edit guest-voice-signaling
                set status {disable | enable}
            next
            edit softphone-voice
                set status {disable | enable}
            next
            edit streaming-video
                set status {disable | enable}
            next
            edit video-conferencing
                set status {disable | enable}
            next
            edit video-signaling
                set status {disable | enable}
            next
            edit voice
                set status {disable | enable}
            next
            edit voice-signaling
                set status {disable | enable}
        end
        config custom-tlvs
            edit <name>
                set oui <identifier>
                set subtype <subtype>
                set information-string <string>
            end
        end
    end
end
```

## Displaying LLDP information

You can use the following commands to display LLDP information:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info lldp stats <switch> <port>
diagnose switch-controller switch-info lldp neighbors-summary <switch>
diagnose switch-controller switch-info lldp neighbors-detail <switch>
```

## Configuring the LLDP settings

The Fortinet data center switches support the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) for transmission and reception wherein the switch will multicast LLDP packets to advertise its identity and capabilities. A switch receives the equivalent information from adjacent layer-2 peers.

Starting in FortiOS 6.4.3, you can also configure the `lldp-status` and `lldp-profile` settings of a virtual switch port in a tenant VDOM. **NOTE:** The `auto-isl` setting in `config switch-controller lldp-profile` is ignored, and the setting remains disabled for the tenant's ports.

Use the following commands to configure LLDP on a FortiSwitch port:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set lldp-status {rx-only | tx-only | tx-rx | disable}
        set lldp-profile <profile_name>
      end
    end
  end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port2
        set lldp-status tx-rx
        set lldp-profile default
      end
    end
  end
```

Use the following commands to configure LLDP on a virtual FortiSwitch port in a tenant VDOM:

```
config vdom
  edit <VDOM_name>
    config switch-controller managed-switch
      edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
        config ports
          edit <port_name>
            set lldp-status {rx-only | tx-only | tx-rx | disable}
            set lldp-profile <profile_name>
          next
        end
      end
    end
  end
```

For example:

```
config vdom
  edit VDOM_1
    config switch-controller managed-switch
      edit "S424ENTF19000007"
        config ports
          edit port28
            set lldp-status tx-rx
            set lldp-profile lldpprofile1
          next
        end
      end
    end
  end
```

end

# FortiSwitch security

This section covers the following topics:

- [FortiSwitch network access control on page 119](#)
- [Configuring dynamic port policy rules on page 135](#)
- [FortiSwitch security policies on page 139](#)
- [Configuring the DHCP trust setting on page 150](#)
- [Configuring the DHCP server access list on page 150](#)
- [Configuring dynamic ARP inspection \(DAI\) on page 152](#)
- [Configuring IPv4 source guard on page 153](#)
- [Security Fabric showing on page 155](#)
- [Blocking intra-VLAN traffic on page 156](#)
- [Quarantines on page 157](#)

## FortiSwitch network access control

You can configure a FortiSwitch network access control (NAC) policy within FortiOS that matches devices with the specified criteria, devices belonging to a specified user group, or devices with a specified FortiClient EMS tag. Devices that match are assigned to a specific VLAN or have port-specific settings applied to them.

**NOTE:** The FortiSwitch NAC settings must be configured before defining a NAC policy. See [Configuring the FortiSwitch NAC settings on page 121](#).

### Summary of the procedure

1. Define a FortiSwitch NAC VLAN. See [Defining a FortiSwitch NAC VLAN on page 119](#).
2. Configure the FortiSwitch NAC settings. See [Configuring the FortiSwitch NAC settings on page 121](#).
3. Create a FortiSwitch NAC policy. See [Defining a FortiSwitch NAC policy on page 123](#).
4. View the devices that match the NAC policy. See [Viewing the devices that match the NAC policy on page 129](#).

### Defining a FortiSwitch NAC VLAN

When devices are matched by a NAC policy, you can assign those devices to a FortiSwitch NAC VLAN. By default, there are six VLAN templates:

- *default*—This VLAN is assigned to all switch ports when the FortiSwitch unit is first discovered.
- *quarantine*—This VLAN contains quarantined traffic.
- *rspan*—This VLAN contains RSPAN and ERSPAN mirrored traffic.
- *voice*—This VLAN is dedicated for voice devices.
- *video*—This VLAN is dedicated for video devices.
- *onboarding*—This VLAN is for NAC onboarding devices.

You can use the default onboarding VLAN, edit it, or create a new NAC VLAN. If you want to use the default onboarding NAC VLAN, specify it when you configure the FortiSwitch NAC settings. If you want to edit the default onboarding VLAN or create a new NAC VLAN, use the following procedures.

## Creating a NAC VLAN

### Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch VLANs*, select *Create New*, and change the following settings:

<b>Interface Name</b>	VLAN name
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Enter a number (1-4094)
<b>Color</b>	Choose a unique color for each VLAN, for ease of visual display.
<b>Role</b>	Select <i>LAN</i> , <i>WAN</i> , <i>DMZ</i> , or <i>Undefined</i> .

2. Enable *DHCP* for IPv4 or IPv6.
3. Set the *Admission access* options as required.
4. Select *OK*.

### Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
  edit <VLAN_name>
    set vlanid <1-4094>
    set color <1-32>
    set interface <FortiLink-enabled interface>
  end
```

## Editing a NAC VLAN

You can edit the default onboarding NAC VLAN.

### Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch VLANs*.
2. Select the onboarding NAC VLAN.
3. Select *Edit*.
4. Make your changes.
5. Select *OK* to save your changes.

### Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller initial-config template
  edit onboarding
    set vlanid <1-4094>
    set allowaccess {ping | https | ssh | snmp | http | telnet | fgfm | radius-acct |
      probe-response | fabric | ftm}
    set auto-ip {enable | disable}
    set dhcp-server {enable | disable}
  end
```



## Configuring the FortiSwitch NAC settings

**NOTE:** The FortiSwitch NAC settings must be configured before defining a NAC policy.

The local mode uses the local port-level settings of managed FortiSwitch units. The global mode applies the NAC to all managed FortiSwitch ports. By default, the mode is local.

You can set how many minutes that NAC devices are allowed to be inactive. By default, NAC devices can be inactive for 15 minutes. The range of values is 0 to 1440 minutes. If you set the inactive-timer to 0, there is no limit to how long the NAC devices can be inactive for.

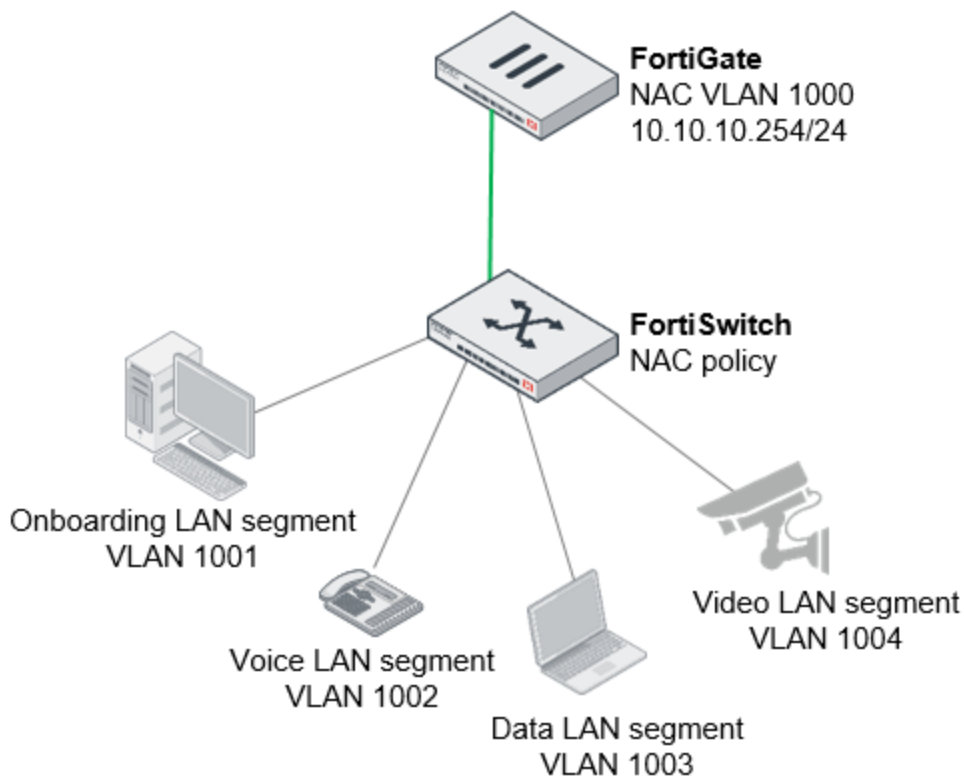
When NAC devices are discovered, they are assigned to the NAC onboarding VLAN. You can specify the default `onboarding` VLAN or specify another existing VLAN. By default, there is no NAC onboarding VLAN assigned.

When NAC devices are discovered and match a NAC policy, they are automatically authorized by default.

Starting in FortiOS 7.0.0, you can use the `set nac-periodic-interval` command to specify how often the NAC engine runs in case any events are missed. The range is 5 to 60 seconds, and the default setting is 15 seconds.

When NAC mode is configured on a port, the link of a switch port goes down and then up by default, which restarts the DHCP process for that device. When a link goes down, the NAC devices are cleared from the switch port that bounced. Bouncing the switch port and restarting DHCP changes the IP addresses of hosts and invalidates firewall sessions. Starting in FortiOS 7.0.1, you can avoid these problems by assigning each VLAN to a separate LAN segment.

LAN segments prevent the IP addresses of hosts from changing but still provide physical isolation. For example, the following figure shows how four LAN segments have been assigned to four separate VLANs:



The switch controls traffic between LAN segments. Enable *Block Intra-VLAN Traffic* in the GUI or use the `set switch-controller-access-vlan` command to allow or prevent traffic between hosts in a LAN segment.



- An RSPAN VLAN interface cannot be a member of a LAN segment group.
- IGMP snooping is not supported with LAN segments.

LAN segments require the following:

- FortiGate devices running FortiOS 7.0.1 or higher with managed FortiSwitch units running FortiSwitchOS 7.0.1 or higher.
- To see which FortiSwitch models support this feature, refer to the [FortiSwitch feature matrix](#).

### To use LAN segments:

- Configure FortiSwitch VLANs without layer-3 properties (unset the IP address, set the access mode to `static`, unset `allowaccess`, and disable the DHCP server).
- Optionally, enable *Block Intra-VLAN Traffic*.
- Enable LAN segments.
- Specify the NAC LAN interface.
- Specify which VLANs belong to that LAN segment.



Do not make changes after assigning a VLAN to a LAN segment. Changing VLANs assigned to LAN segments might have unexpected results.

## Configuring NAC on a global level

```
config switch-controller fortilink-settings
  edit <name_of_FortiLink_interface>
    set inactive-timer <integer>
    set link-down-flush {enable | disable}
  config nac-ports
    set onboarding-vlan <string>
    set bounce-nac-port {enable | disable}
    set lan-segment {enabled | disabled}
    set nac-lan-interfaces <string>
    set nac-segment-vlans <VLAN_interface_name>
  end
next
end

config switch-controller system
  set nac-periodic-interval <5-60 seconds>
end
```

### For example:

```
config switch-controller fortilink-settings
  edit "fortilink"
    config nac-ports
      set onboarding-vlan "onboarding"
      set lan-segment enabled
      set nac-lan-interface "nac_segment"
      set nac-segment-vlans "voice" "video"
```

```
        end
    next
end

config switch-controller system
    set nac-periodic-interval <5-60 seconds>
end
```

## Configuring NAC on a local level

### Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
        config ports
            edit <port_name>
                set access-mode nac
            next
        end
    next
end
```

### Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports*.
2. Right-click a port.
3. Select *Mode > NAC*.

## Synchronizing MAC events

```
config switch interface
    edit <FortiSwitch_interface>
        set nac enable
    end
```

### For example

```
config switch interface
    edit port20
        set nac enable
    end
```

## Defining a FortiSwitch NAC policy

In the FortiOS GUI, you can create three types of NAC policies:

- *Device*—The NAC policy matches devices with the specified MAC address, hardware vendor, device family, type, operating system, and user. Visit [https://filestore.fortinet.com/product-downloads/fortilink/HTFO\\_list.json](https://filestore.fortinet.com/product-downloads/fortilink/HTFO_list.json) to see a list of values for hardware vendor, type, device family, and operating system.
- *User*—The NAC policy matches devices belonging to the specified user group.
- *EMS tag*—The NAC policy matches devices with the specified FortiClient EMS tag.

Using the CLI, you can specify a MAC policy to be applied to devices that have been matched by the NAC policy. See [Creating a MAC policy on page 128](#).

Starting in FortiOS 7.0.2, you can specify FortiSwitch groups in NAC policies instead of specifying individual managed FortiSwitch units when creating a NAC policy. In FortiOS 7.0.2, the `set switch-scope` command has been replaced with the `set switch-group` command. You can select more than one FortiSwitch group in the CLI and GUI, and the same FortiSwitch unit can be included in more than one FortiSwitch group. If no FortiSwitch group is specified in the `set switch-group` command, all FortiSwitch groups are used for the NAC policy.

When you upgrade to FortiOS 7.0.2, the individual FortiSwitch units selected for the NAC policy are assigned to a new FortiSwitch group, and the new FortiSwitch group replaces the individual FortiSwitch units in the NAC policy. If you downgrade from FortiOS 7.0.2, the individual FortiSwitch units in the FortiSwitch group are listed in the `set switch-scope` command in the NAC policy, and the `set switch-group` command is removed from the NAC policy.

**NOTE:** The FortiSwitch NAC settings must be configured before defining a FortiSwitch NAC policy. See [Configuring the FortiSwitch NAC settings on page 121](#).

## Creating a device policy

A device policy matches devices with the specified criteria and then assigns a specific VLAN to those devices or applies port-level settings to those devices. You can specify the MAC address, hardware vendor, device family, type, operating system, and user for the devices to match.

By default, there is a default device policy, `Onboarding VLAN`, which uses the default `onboarding` NAC VLAN. You can use the default `Onboarding VLAN` policy, edit it, or create a new NAC policy.

Starting in FortiOS 7.0.1, you can configure a dynamic firewall address for devices and use it in a NAC policy. When a device matches the NAC policy, the MAC address for that device is automatically assigned to the dynamic firewall address, which can be used in firewall policies to control traffic from/to these devices. Configuring a dynamic firewall address requires setting the address type to `dynamic` and the address subtype to `swc-tag`. Using the dynamic firewall address in a NAC policy requires specifying the conditions that a device must match and setting the firewall address to the name of the dynamic firewall address.



To identify devices to add to a device policy, try the following:

- Use the `diagnose user device list` command to see devices connected to your FortiGate device.
- Use the FortiGuard Device Detection service (<https://www.fortiguard.com/learnmore#dds>) to provide information about an IoT device based on its MAC address.

## Using the GUI to configure a NAC policy and a dynamic firewall address:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > NAC Policies*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the Name field, enter a name for the NAC policy.
4. Make certain that the status is set to *Enabled*.
5. Click *Specify* to select which FortiSwitch groups to apply the NAC policy to or click *All*.
6. Select *Device* for the category.
7. If you want the device to match a MAC address, enable *MAC Address* and enter the MAC address to match. Starting in FortiOS 6.4.6, you can use the wildcard `*` character when entering the MAC address (for example, `xx:xx:xx:*:*:*`).

8. If you want the device to match a hardware vendor, enable *Hardware Vendor* and enter the name of the hardware vendor to match. Starting in FortiOS 6.4.6, you can use the wildcard \* character when entering the hardware vendor.
9. If you want the device to match a device family, enable *Device Family* and enter the name of the device family to match. Starting in FortiOS 6.4.6, you can use the wildcard \* character when entering the device family.
10. If you want the device to match a device type, enable *Type* and enter the device type to match. Starting in FortiOS 6.4.6, you can use the wildcard \* character when entering the device type.
11. If you want the device to match an operating system, enable *Operating System* and enter the operating system to match. Starting in FortiOS 6.4.6, you can use the wildcard \* character when entering the operating system.
12. If you want the device to match a user, enable *User* and enter the user name to match. Starting in FortiOS 6.4.6, you can use the wildcard \* character when entering the user name.
13. If you want to assign a specific VLAN to the device that matches the specified criteria, select *Assign VLAN* and enter the VLAN identifier.
14. If you do not want to bounce the switch port (administratively bringing the link down and then up) when NAC mode is configured, disable *Bounce port*.
15. To use a dynamic firewall address for matching a device, enable *Assign device to dynamic address* and, from the dropdown list, click *Create*.
  - a. In the *Name* field, enter the name of the dynamic firewall address.
  - b. To change the color, click *Change* and select the color used for the corresponding icon in the GUI.
  - c. The address type is set to *Dynamic* by default and the subtype is set to *Switch Controller NAC Policy Tag* by default.
  - d. For the interface, select the interface whose IP address is to be used.
  - e. In the *Comments* field, enter a description of the dynamic firewall address.
  - f. Click *OK* to save the dynamic firewall address.
16. Select *OK* to create the new NAC policy.

### Using the CLI to configure a dynamic firewall address:

```
config firewall address
  edit <name_of_dynamic_firewall_address>
    set type dynamic
    set sub-type swc-tag
  next
end
```

For example:

```
config firewall address
  edit "office_vm_device"
    set type dynamic
    set sub-type swc-tag
  next
end
```

### To view the dynamic MAC addresses attached to the firewall:

```
diagnose firewall dynamic list
```

### Using the CLI to configure a NAC policy:

```
config user nac-policy
  edit <policy_name>
    set description <description_of_policy>
```

```
set category device
set status enable
set mac <MAC_address>
set hw-vendor <hardware_vendor>
set type <device_type>
set family <device_family>
set os <operating_system>
set hw-version <hardware_version>
set sw-version <software_version>
set host <host_name>
set user <user_name>.
set src <source>
set switch-fortilink <FortiLink_interface>
set switch-group <list_of_FortiSwitch_groups>
set switch-auto-auth {enable | disable}
set switch-mac-policy <switch_mac_policy>
set firewall-address <name_of_dynamic_firewall_address>
end
```

For example:

```
config user nac-policy
edit "OFFICE_VM"
set hw-vendor "VMware"
set switch-fortilink "fortilink"
set switch-mac-policy "OFFICE_VM"
set firewall-address "office_vm_device"
next
end
```

## Creating a user policy

A user policy matches devices that are assigned to the specified user group and then assigns a specific VLAN to those devices or applies port-level settings to those devices.

### Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > NAC Policies*.
2. Select *Create New*.
3. In the Name field, enter a name for the NAC policy.
4. Make certain that the status is set to *Enabled*.
5. Click *Specify* to select which FortiSwitch groups to apply the NAC policy to or click *All*.
6. Select *User* for the category.
7. Select which user group that devices must belong to.
8. If you want to assign a specific VLAN to a device assigned to the specified user group, select *Assign VLAN* and enter the VLAN identifier.
9. Select *OK* to create the new NAC policy.

### Using the CLI:

```
config user nac-policy
edit <policy_name>
set description <description_of_policy>
set category firewall-user user
```

```
set status enable
set user-group <name_of_user_group>
set switch-fortilink <FortiLink_interface>
set switch-group <list_of_FortiSwitch_groups>
set switch-auto-auth {enable | disable}
set switch-mac-policy <switch_mac_policy>
end
```

## Creating an EMS-tag policy

An EMS-tag policy matches devices with a specified MAC address and then assigns a specific VLAN to those devices or applies port-level settings to those devices. The MAC address is derived from an Endpoint Management Server (EMS) tag created in FortiClient.

**NOTE:** The FortiClient EMS server must be 6.4.1 build 1442 or higher. FortiOS must be 6.4.2 build 1709 or higher.

Before creating an EMS-tag policy on a managed FortiSwitch unit:

1. In FortiClient EMS, group FortiClient Fabric Agent endpoints with an EMS tag.
2. In FortiClient EMS, share these endpoint groups with a FortiGate unit over the EMS connector.
3. In FortiOS, add an on-premise FortiClient EMS server to the Security Fabric:

```
config endpoint-control fctems
  edit <ems_name>
    set server <ip_address>
    set certificate <string>
  next
end
```

For example:

```
config endpoint-control fctems
  edit EMS_Server
    set server 1.2.3.4
    set certificate REMOTE_Cert_1
  next
end
```

4. In FortiOS, verify the EMS certificate. For example:

```
execute fctems verify EMS_Server
```

5. In FortiOS, check that the FortiGate unit and FortiClient are connected:

```
diagnose user device get <FortiClient_MAC_address>
```

6. In FortiOS, verify which MAC addresses the dynamic firewall address resolves to:

```
diagnose firewall dynamic list
```

**Using the GUI to create an EMS-tag policy:**

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > NAC Policies*.
2. Select *Create New*.
3. In the Name field, enter a name for the NAC policy.
4. Make certain that the status is set to *Enabled*.
5. Click *Specify* to select which FortiSwitch groups to apply the NAC policy to or click *All*.
6. Select *EMS Tag* for the category.
7. Select which FortiClient EMS tag that devices must be assigned.
8. If you want to assign a specific VLAN to a device assigned to the specified EMS tag, select *Assign VLAN* and enter the VLAN identifier.
9. Select *OK* to create the new NAC policy.

**Using the CLI to create an EMS-tag policy:**

```
config user nac-policy
  edit <policy_name>
    set description <description_of_policy>
    set category ems-tag
    set ems-tag <string>
    set status enable
    set switch-fortilink <FortiLink_interface>
    set switch-group <list_of_FortiSwitch_groups>
    set switch-auto-auth {enable | disable}
    set switch-mac-policy <switch_mac_policy>
  next
end
```

For example:

```
config user nac-policy
  edit nac_policy_1
    set category ems-tag
    set ems-tag MAC_FCTEMS0000108427_Low
    set switch-fortilink fortilink1
  next
end
```

**Creating a MAC policy**

You can apply a MAC policy to the devices that were matched by the NAC policy. You can specify which VLAN is applied, select which traffic policy is used, and enable or disable packet count.

```
config switch-controller mac-policy
  edit <MAC_policy_name>
    set description <policy_description>
    set fortilink <FortiLink_interface>
    set vlan <VLAN_name>
    set traffic-policy <traffic_policy_name>
    set count {enable | disable}
  next
end
```



## Viewing the devices that match the NAC policy

### Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > NAC Policies*.
2. Click *View Matched Devices*.
3. Click *Refresh* to update the results.

When a NAC device is matched to a NAC policy and assigned to a VLAN, an event log is created.

Date/Time	Level	Message	Log Description	Serial Number	Log Details
2020/11/30 11:20:30	Info	Edit switch.acl.ingress:action 3	FortiSwitch system	S248EPTF18000000	<div>Log Details</div> <div>General</div> <div>Date 2020/11/30</div> <div>Time 11:20:28</div> <div>Virtual Domain vdom1</div> <div>Log Description NAC device addition</div> <div>Source</div> <div>User Switch-Controller</div> <div>Data</div> <div>Message New NAC device added with MAC=00:c2:9d:44:4f:00 from switch=S248EPTF18000000 port=port6 vlan=Lab_VLAN.</div> <div>Action</div> <div>Action nac-device-add</div> <div>Security</div> <div>Level Info</div> <div>Cellular</div> <div>Serial Number S248EPTF18000000</div> <div>Other</div> <div>Log event original timestamp 1606764028195609300</div> <div>Timezone -0800</div> <div>Log ID 0115022897</div> <div>Type event</div> <div>Sub Type switch-controller</div> <div>User Interface flcfd</div> <div>Name FSW11</div>
2020/11/30 11:20:30	Info	Edit switch.acl.ingress:classifier 3	FortiSwitch system	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:30	Info	Add switch.acl.ingress 3	FortiSwitch system	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:30	Info	Add switch.vlan:member-by-mac 2001:3	FortiSwitch system	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:30	Info	Edit switch.interface port6	FortiSwitch system	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:30	Info	Edit switch.physical-port port6	FortiSwitch system	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:28	Info	New NAC device added with MAC=00:c2:9d:44:4f:00	NAC device addition	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:15	Info	primary port port6 instance 0 changed state from dl...	FortiSwitch spanning Tree	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:13	Info	primary port port6 instance 0 changed role from dis...	FortiSwitch spanning Tree	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:13	Info	primary switch port port6 has come up	FortiSwitch link	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:09	Info	primary port port6 instance 0 changed role from de...	FortiSwitch spanning Tree	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:09	Info	primary switch port port6 has gone down	FortiSwitch link	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:09	Info	primary port port6 instance 0 changed role from dis...	FortiSwitch spanning Tree	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:09	Info	primary switch port port6 has come up	FortiSwitch link	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:05	Info	Bounce port: putting switch port port6 as up	FortiSwitch switch	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:01	Info	primary port port6 instance 0 changed role from de...	FortiSwitch spanning Tree	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:01	Info	primary switch port port6 has gone down	FortiSwitch link	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:00	Info	Bounce port: putting switch port port6 as down	FortiSwitch switch	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:00	Info	Config download successful	Switch-Controller Switch Sync Complete	S248EPTF18000000	
2020/11/30 11:20:00	Info	Delete switch.acl.ingress 3	FortiSwitch system	S248EPTF18000000	

### Using the CLI:

To show known NAC devices with a known location that match a NAC policy:

```
diagnose switch-controller mac-device nac known
```

To show pending NAC devices with an unknown location that match a NAC policy:

```
diagnose switch-controller mac-device nac onboarding
```

To view the NAC clients:

```
diagnose switch-controller mac-device cache
```

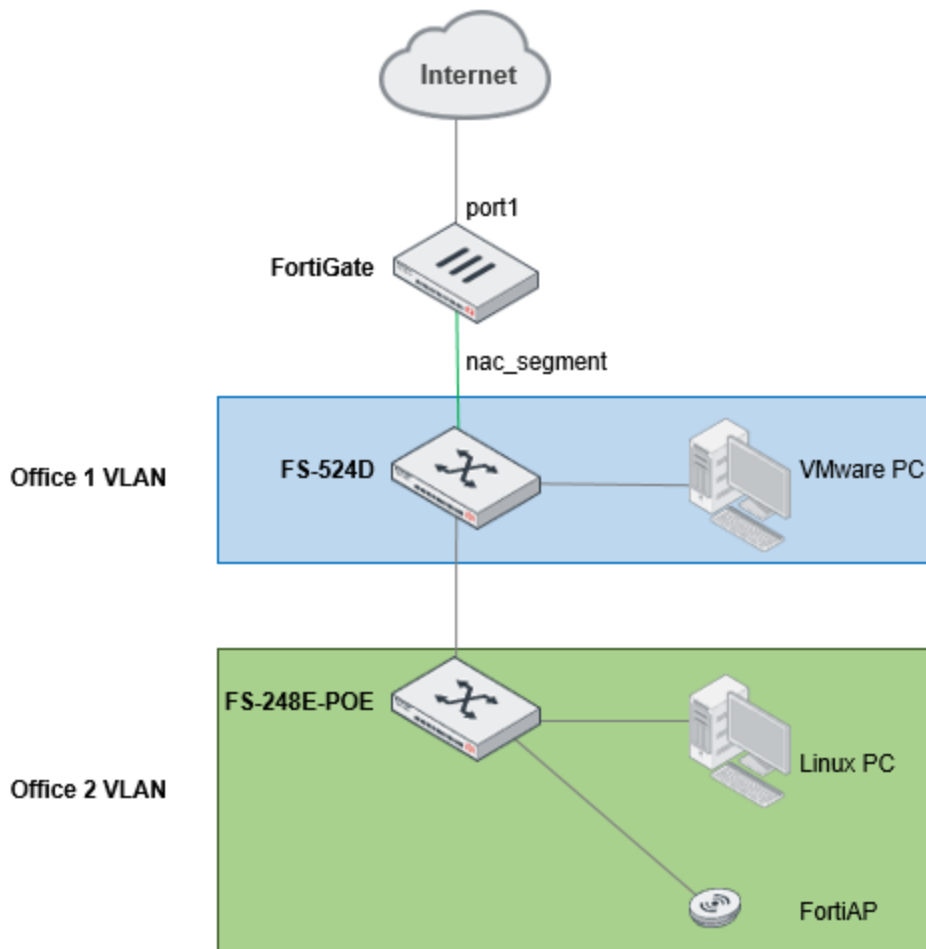
To display the NAC cache of MAC addresses on the FortiSwitch unit:

```
execute switch-controller get-nac-mac-cache
```

## Example of using LAN segments with NAC

In this example, devices are initially placed in the onboarding VLAN and receive IP addresses from the nac\_segment DHCP server. Ports connected to the devices are configured with the NAC access mode. NAC policies are used to identify devices by OS and place them into the appropriate VLAN segment and dynamic firewall address. Firewall

policies match traffic from the nac\_segment interface by the dynamic firewall address and apply the appropriate security profiles to each.



1. Configure the FortiSwitch VLANs for Office 1 and Office 2.

```
config system interface
  edit "Office2"
    set vdom "root"
    set device-identification enable
    set role lan
    set snmp-index 33
    set color 10
    set interface "fortilink"
    set vlanid 2000
  next
  edit "Office1"
    set vdom "root"
    set device-identification enable
    set role lan
    set snmp-index 34
    set color 5
    set interface "fortilink"
    set vlanid 2001
```

```
    next
end
```

- 2.** The following is the configuration for the `nac_segment` interface and its corresponding DHCP server settings. These settings are the default.

```
config system interface
    edit "nac_segment"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.255.13.1 255.255.255.0
        set description "NAC Segment VLAN"
        set alias "nac_segment.fortilink"
        set device-identification enable
        set snmp-index 32
        set switch-controller-feature nac-segment
        set interface "fortilink"
        set vlanid 4088
    next
end
config system dhcp server
    edit 5
        set lease-time 300
        set dns-service default
        set default-gateway 10.255.13.1
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "nac_segment"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 10.255.13.2
                set end-ip 10.255.13.254
            next
        end
        set timezone-option default
    next
end
```

- 3.** Add the Office 1 VLAN and Office 2 VLAN to the LAN segment VLANs.

```
config switch-controller fortilink-settings
    edit "fortilink"
        config nac-ports
            set onboarding-vlan "onboarding"
            set lan-segment enabled
            set nac-lan-interface "nac_segment"
            set nac-segment-vlans "voice" "video" "Office2" "Office1"
        end
    next
end
```

- 4.** Configure the NAC policy for devices in Office 1 and Office 2.

If you configure the NAC policy from the GUI, you can create the `office2_device` and `office1_device` dynamic firewall addresses inline. However, if you create the NAC policy from the CLI, first create the firewall addresses and then create the MAC policy and NAC policies.

```
config firewall address
  edit "office2_device"
    set type dynamic
    set sub-type swc-tag
    set color 19
  next
  edit "office1_device"
    set type dynamic
    set sub-type swc-tag
    set color 10
  next
end

config switch-controller mac-policy
  edit "Office2_FAP"
    set fortilink "fortilink"
    set vlan "Office2"
  next
  edit "Office2_PC"
    set fortilink "fortilink"
    set vlan "Office2"
  next
  edit "Office1_PC"
    set fortilink "fortilink"
    set vlan "Office1"
  next
end

config user nac-policy
  edit "OFFICE2_FAP"
    set hw-vendor "Fortinet"
    set family "FortiAP"
    set os "FortiAP OS"
    set switch-fortilink "fortilink"
    set switch-group "Office2switches"
    set switch-mac-policy "Office2_FAP"
    set firewall-address "office2_device"
  next
  edit "OFFICE2_PC"
    set os "Linux"
    set switch-fortilink "fortilink"
    set switch-group "Office2switches"
    set switch-mac-policy "Office2_PC"
    set firewall-address "office2_device"
  next
  edit "OFFICE1_PC"
    set hw-vendor "VMware"
    set switch-fortilink "fortilink"
    set switch-group "Office1switches"
    set switch-mac-policy "Office1_PC"
    set firewall-address "office1_device"
  next
end
```

**5. Configure the firewall policy for devices in Office 1 or Office 2.**

The source of all traffic is `nac_segment`, but the traffic is filtered on the `srcaddr` by the dynamic firewall address previously assigned by the NAC policies.

```
config firewall policy
  edit 5
    set name "Office1_Device"
    set uuid d3e2bbdc-d9c1-51eb-dbd3-cb534366b58d
    set srcintf "nac_segment"
    set dstintf "port1"
    set action accept
    set srcaddr "office1_device"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
    set logtraffic all
    set nat enable
  next
  edit 4
    set name "Office2_Device"
    set uuid a724c2fc-d9c1-51eb-e8d8-a501419308b3
    set srcintf "nac_segment"
    set dstintf "port1"
    set action accept
    set srcaddr "office2_device"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL ICMP" "FTP" "FTP_GET" "FTP_PUT" "HTTP" "HTTPS" "TFTP"
    set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
    set logtraffic all
    set nat enable
  next
  edit 3
    set name "All_devices"
    set uuid 0accfbae-d9c1-51eb-b0bf-2ba0b00647c0
    set srcintf "nac_segment"
    set dstintf "port1"
    set action accept
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set utm-status enable
    set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
    set av-profile "default"
    set webfilter-profile "default"
    set dnsfilter-profile "default"
    set ips-sensor "default"
    set application-list "default"
    set logtraffic all
    set nat enable
  next
end
```

## 6. Place the ports in NAC mode.

```

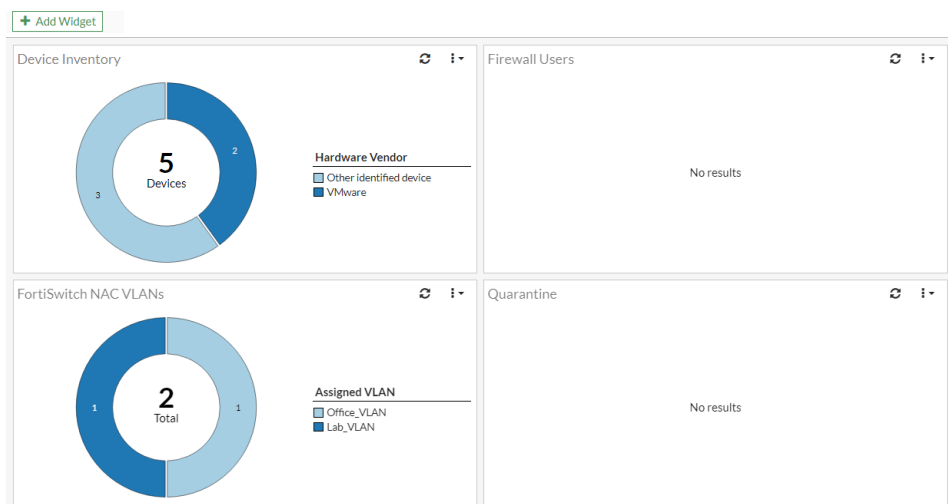
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit "S524DN4K16000116"
    config ports
      edit "port7"
        set vlan "onboarding"
        set allowed-vlans "quarantine" "nac_segment"
        set untagged-vlans "quarantine" "nac_segment"
        set access-mode nac
      next
    end
  next
  edit "S248EPTF18001384"
    config ports
      edit "port1"
        set vlan "onboarding"
        set allowed-vlans "quarantine" "nac_segment"
        set untagged-vlans "quarantine" "nac_segment"
        set access-mode nac
      next
      edit "port6"
        set vlan "onboarding"
        set allowed-vlans "quarantine" "nac_segment"
        set untagged-vlans "quarantine" "nac_segment"
        set access-mode nac
      next
    end
  next
end

```

## Using the FortiSwitch NAC VLAN widget

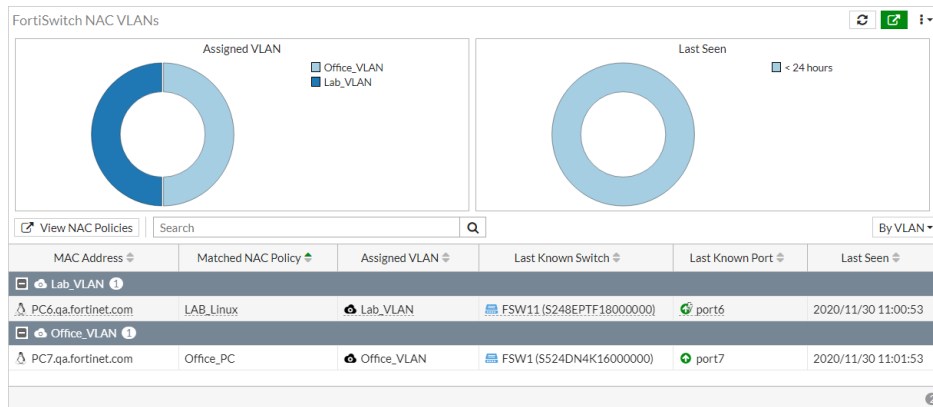
The widget shows a pie chart of the assigned FortiSwitch NAC VLANs. When expanded to the full screen, the widget shows a full list of devices grouped by VLAN, NAC policy, or last seen.

The widget is added to the *Users & Devices* dashboard after a dashboard reset or can be manually added to a dashboard. It can also be accessed by going to *WiFi & Switch Controller > NAC Policies* and clicking *View Matched Devices*.



The expanded view of the widget shows Assigned VLAN and Last Seen pie charts and a full device list. The list can be organized *By VLAN*, *By NAC Policy*, or *By Policy Type*.

Click *View NAC Policies* to go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > NAC Policies*.



## Configuring dynamic port policy rules

Dynamic port policies allow you to specify rules that dynamically determine port policies. After you create the FortiLink policy settings, you define the dynamic port policy rules. When a rule matches the specified device patterns, the switch-controller actions control the port's properties.

**NOTE:** Visit [https://filestore.fortinet.com/product-downloads/fortilink/HTFO\\_list.json](https://filestore.fortinet.com/product-downloads/fortilink/HTFO_list.json) to see a list of values for hardware vendor, type, device family, and operating system.

When you add dynamic port policy rules to the FortiLink policy settings, the rules are processed sequentially, from the first rule to the last rule. The last rule in the FortiLink policy settings should indicate the default properties for any port that has been assigned these FortiLink policy settings.



To identify devices to add to a dynamic port policy rule, try the following:

- Use the `diagnose user device list` command to see devices connected to your FortiGate device.
- Use the FortiGuard Device Detection service (<https://www.fortiguard.com/learnmore#dds>) to provide information about an IoT device based on its MAC address.

### To configure dynamic port policy rules:

1. Set the access mode and port policy for the port on page 136
2. Set the FortiLink policy settings to the FortiLink interface on page 136
3. Create the FortiLink policy settings on page 136
4. Create the dynamic port policy rule on page 137
5. Set how often the dynamic port policy engine runs on page 139

## Set the access mode and port policy for the port

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set access-mode dynamic
        set port-policy <dynamic_port_policy>
      next
    end
  next
end
```

## Set the FortiLink policy settings to the FortiLink interface

Enable the dynamic port policy on the FortiLink interface by specifying the FortiLink policy settings on the FortiLink interface.

```
config system interface
  edit fortilink
    set switch-controller-dynamic <FortiLink_policy_settings>
  next
end
```

## Create the FortiLink policy settings

### Using the GUI

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Port Policies*.
2. Click *Dynamic Port Policies*.
3. Click *Configure Dynamic Port Settings*.
4. Select the onboarding VLAN from the *Onboarding VLAN* dropdown list. The default onboarding VLAN is *onboarding*.
5. Move the *Bounce port* slider to enable it if you want the link to go down and then up when the NAC mode is configured on the port.
6. If you are using the dynamic port policy with FortiSwitch network access control, move the *Apply rule to NAC policies* slider to enable it.
7. Click *Next*.
8. When devices are matched by a dynamic port policy, you can assign those devices to a dynamic port VLAN. By default, there are six VLAN templates:
  - *default*—This VLAN is assigned to all switch ports when the FortiSwitch unit is first discovered.
  - *onboarding*—This VLAN is for NAC onboarding devices.
  - *quarantine*—This VLAN contains quarantined traffic.
  - *rspan*—This VLAN contains RSPAN and ERSPAN mirrored traffic.
  - *video*—This VLAN is dedicated for video devices.
  - *voice*—This VLAN is dedicated for voice devices.

You can select one of the default VLAN templates, edit one of the default VLAN templates, or create a dynamic port VLAN.

9. Click *Submit*.



## Using the CLI

```
config switch-controller fortilink-settings
  edit <name_of_this_FortiLink_configuration>
    set inactive-timer <integer>
    set link-down-flush {enable | disable}
  config nac-ports
    set onboarding-vlan <string>
    set bounce-nac-port {enable | disable}
  end
next
end
```

## Create the dynamic port policy rule

### Using the GUI

1. On the *Dynamic Port Policies* page, select the dynamic port policy that you want to add dynamic port policy rules to.
2. Click *Edit*.
3. Click *Create New*.
4. In the *Name* field, enter a name for the dynamic port policy rule.
5. Make certain that the status is set to *Enabled*.
6. In the *Description* field, enter a description of the dynamic port policy rule.
7. If you want the device to match a MAC address, enable *MAC Address* and enter the MAC address to match.
8. If you want the device to match a host name or IP address, enable *Host* and enter the host name or IP address to match.
9. If you want the device to match a hardware vendor, enable *Hardware vendor* and enter the name of the hardware vendor to match in the *Hardware vendor* field.  
This option is available in FortiOS 7.0.4 and higher.
10. If you want the device to match a device family, enable *Device Family* and enter the name of the device family to match.
11. If you want the device to match a device type, enable *Type* and enter the device type to match.
12. If you want to assign an LLDP profile to the device that matches the specified criteria, enable *LLDP profile* and select the LLDP profile.
13. If you want to assign a QoS policy to the device that matches the specified criteria, enable *QoS policy* and select the QoS policy.
14. If you want to assign an 802.1x policy to the device that matches the specified criteria, enable *802.1X policy* and select the 802.1x policy.
15. If you want to assign a VLAN policy to the device that matches the specified criteria, enable *VLAN policy* and select the VLAN policy.
16. Click *OK*.

### Using the CLI

```
config switch-controller dynamic-port-policy
  edit <dynamic_port_policy_name>
    set description <string>
    set fortilink <FortiLink_interface_name>
  config policy
    edit <policy_name>
      set description <string>
```

```

        set status {enable | disable}
        set category {device | interface-tag}
        set hw-vendor <hardware_vendor>
        set mac <MAC_address>
        set type <device_type>
        set family <device_family_name>
        set host <host_name_or_IP_address>
        set lldp-profile <LLDP_profile_name>
        set qos-policy <QoS_policy_name>
        set 802-1x <802.1x_policy_name>
        set vlan-policy <VLAN_policy_name>
        set bounce-port-link {disable | enable}
    next
end
next
end

```

For example:

```

config switch-controller dynamic-port-policy
edit DPP1
    set description "Policy for VMware devices"
    set fortilink "flink"
    config policy
        edit policy1
            set description "Rule applies only to VMware devices"
            set status enable
            set hw-vendor "VMware"
            set lldp-profile "LLDPprofile1"
            set bounce-port-link enable
        next
    end
next
end

```

## Creating a VLAN policy

You can specify a VLAN policy to be used in the port policy. In the VLAN policy, you can specify the native VLAN to be applied, the allowed VLANs, and the untagged VLANs. You can enable or disable all defined VLANs and select whether to discard untagged or tagged frames or to not discard any frames.

```

config switch-controller vlan-policy
edit <VLAN_policy_name>
    set description <policy_description>
    set fortilink <FortiLink_interface>
    set vlan <VLAN_name>
    set allowed-vlans <lists_of_VLAN_names>
    set untagged-vlans <lists_of_VLAN_names>
    set allowed-vlans-all {enable | disable}
    set discard-mode {none | all-untagged | all-tagged}
next
end

```

For example:

```

config switch-controller vlan-policy

```

```
edit vlan_policy_1
    set fortilink fortilink1
    set vlan default
next
end
```

## Set how often the dynamic port policy engine runs

In the FortiOS CLI, you can change how often the dynamic port policy engine runs. By default, it runs every 15 seconds. The range of values is 5-60 seconds.

```
config switch-controller system
    set dynamic-periodic-interval <5-60 seconds>
end
```

## FortiSwitch security policies

To control network access, the managed FortiSwitch unit supports IEEE 802.1x authentication. A supplicant connected to a port on the switch must be authenticated by a RADIUS/Diameter server to gain access to the network. The supplicant and the authentication server communicate using the switch using the EAP protocol. The managed FortiSwitch unit supports EAP-PEAP, EAP-TTLS, EAP-TLS, and EAP-MD5.

To use the RADIUS server for authentication, you must configure the server before configuring the users or user groups on the managed FortiSwitch unit.

**NOTE:** In FortiLink mode, you must manually create a firewall policy to allow RADIUS traffic for 802.1x authentication from the FortiSwitch unit (for example, from the FortiLink interface) to the RADIUS server through the FortiGate.

The managed FortiSwitch unit implements MAC-based authentication. The switch saves the MAC address of each supplicant's device. The switch provides network access only to devices that have successfully been authenticated.

You can enable the MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) option for devices (such as network printers) that cannot respond to the 802.1x authentication request. With MAB enabled on the port, the system will use the device MAC address as the user name and password for authentication.

You can configure a guest VLAN for unauthorized users and a VLAN for users whose authentication was unsuccessful. Starting in FortiSwitchOS 6.4.3, if the RADIUS server cannot be reached for 802.1x authentication, you can specify a RADIUS timeout VLAN for users after the authentication server timeout period expires.

When you are testing your system configuration for 802.1x authentication, you can use the monitor mode to allow network traffic to flow, even if there are configuration problems or authentication failures.



Fortinet recommends an 802.1x setup rate of 5 to 10 sessions per second.

---

This section covers the following topics:

- [Number of devices supported per port for 802.1x MAC-based authentication on page 140](#)
- [Configuring the 802.1x settings for a virtual domain on page 140](#)
- [Overriding the virtual domain settings on page 141](#)

- [Defining an 802.1x security policy on page 142](#)
- [Applying an 802.1x security policy to a FortiSwitch port on page 143](#)
- [Testing 802.1x authentication with monitor mode on page 144](#)
- [RADIUS accounting support on page 144](#)
- [RADIUS change of authorization \(CoA\) support on page 145](#)
- [802.1x authentication deployment example on page 147](#)
- [Detailed deployment notes on page 149](#)

## Number of devices supported per port for 802.1x MAC-based authentication

The FortiSwitch unit supports up to 20 devices per port for 802.1x MAC-based authentication. System-wide, the FortiSwitch unit now supports a total of 10 times the number of interfaces for 802.1x MAC-based authentication. See the following table.

Model	Total number of devices supported per switch
108	80
112	60
124/224/424/524/1024	240
148/248/448/548/1048	480
3032	320

## Configuring the 802.1x settings for a virtual domain

To configure the 802.1x security policy for a virtual domain, use the following commands:

```
config switch-controller 802-1X-settings
    set reauth-period <integer>
    set max-reauth-attempt <integer>
    set link-down-auth {*set-unauth | no-action}
end
```

Option	Description
<code>set link-down-auth</code>	If a link is down, this command determines the authentication state. Choosing <code>set-unauth</code> sets the interface to unauthenticated when a link is down, and reauthentication is needed. Choosing <code>no-action</code> means that the interface does not need to be reauthenticated when a link is down.

Option	Description
<code>set reauth-period</code>	<p>This command sets how often reauthentication is needed. The range is 1-1440 minutes. The default is 60 minutes. Setting the value to 0 minutes disables reauthentication.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Setting the <code>reauth-period</code> to 0 is supported only in the CLI. The RADIUS dynamic session timeout and CoA session timeout do not support setting the Session Timeout to 0. For MAB authentication, the host entry is automatically reauthenticated after the <code>reauth-period</code>. To clear the host entry, you need to clear the entry manually.</p>
<code>set max-reauth-attempt</code>	<p>This command sets the maximum number of reauthentication attempts. The range is 1-15. The default is 3. Setting the value to 0 disables reauthentication.</p>

## Overriding the virtual domain settings

You can override the virtual domain settings for the 802.1x security policy.

### Using the FortiGate GUI

To override the 802.1x settings for a virtual domain:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click on a FortiSwitch faceplate and select *Edit*.
3. In the Edit Managed FortiSwitch page, move the *Override 802-1X settings* slider to the right.
4. In the Reauthentication Interval field, enter the number of minutes before reauthentication is required. The maximum interval is 1,440 minutes. Setting the value to 0 minutes disables reauthentication.
5. In the Max Reauthentication Attempts field, enter the maximum times that reauthentication is attempted. The maximum number of attempts is 15. Setting the value to 0 disables reauthentication.
6. Select *Deauthenticate* or *None* for the link down action. Selecting *Deauthenticate* sets the interface to unauthenticated when a link is down, and reauthentication is needed. Selecting *None* means that the interface does not need to be reauthenticated when a link is down.
7. Select *OK*.

### Using the FortiGate CLI

To override the 802.1x settings for a virtual domain:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit < switch >
    config 802-1X-settings
      set local-override [ enable | *disable ]
      set reauth-period < int >                // visible if override enabled
      set max-reauth-attempt < int >           // visible if override enabled
      set link-down-auth < *set-unauth | no-action > // visible if override enabled
    end
  next
end
```

For a description of the options, see [Configuring the 802.1x settings for a virtual domain](#).

## Defining an 802.1x security policy

You can define multiple 802.1x security policies.

### Using the FortiGate GUI

To create an 802.1x security policy:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Port Policies*.
2. Under *Security Policies*, click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the new FortiSwitch security policy.
4. For the security mode, click *Port-based* or *MAC-based*.
5. Select + to select which user groups will have access.
6. Enable or disable guest VLANs on this interface to allow restricted access for some users.
7. Enter the number of seconds for authentication delay for guest VLANs. The range is 1-900 seconds.
8. Enable or disable authentication fail VLAN on this interface to allow restricted access for users who fail to access the guest VLAN.
9. Enable or disable MAC authentication bypass (MAB) on this interface.
10. Enable or disable EAP pass-through mode on this interface.
11. Enable or disable whether the session timeout for the RADIUS server will overwrite the local timeout.
12. Select *OK*.

### Using the FortiGate CLI

To create an 802.1x security policy, use the following commands:

```
config switch-controller security-policy 802-1X
  edit "<policy.name>"
    set security-mode {802.1X | 802.1X-mac-based}
    set user-group <*group_name | Guest-group | SSO_Guest_Users>
    set mac-auth-bypass {enable | *disable}
    set eap-passthru {enable | disable}
    set guest-vlan {enable | *disable}
    set guest-vlan-id "<guest-VLAN-name>"
    set guest-auth-delay <integer>
    set auth-fail-vlan {enable | *disable}
    set auth-fail-vlan-id "<auth-fail-VLAN-name>"
    set radius-timeout-overwrite {enable | *disable}
    set policy-type 802.1X
    set authserver-timeout-vlan {enable | disable}
    set authserver-timeout-period <integer>
    set authserver-timeout-vlanid "<RADIUS-timeout-VLAN-name>"
  end
end
```

Option	Description
<code>set security-mode</code>	You can restrict access with 802.1x port-based authentication or with 802.1x MAC-based authentication.
<code>set user-group</code>	You can set a specific group name, Guest-group, or SSO_Guest_Users to have access. This setting is mandatory.
<code>set mac-auth-bypass</code>	You can enable or disable MAB on this interface.
<code>set eap-passthrough</code>	You can enable or disable EAP pass-through mode on this interface.
<code>set guest-vlan</code>	You can enable or disable guest VLANs on this interface to allow restricted access for some users.
<code>set guest-vlan-id "&lt;guest-VLAN-name&gt;"</code>	You can specify the name of the guest VLAN.
<code>set guest-auth-delay</code>	You can set the authentication delay for guest VLANs on this interface. The range is 1-900 seconds.
<code>set auth-fail-vlan</code>	You can enable or disable the authentication fail VLAN on this interface to allow restricted access for users who fail to access the guest VLAN.
<code>set auth-fail-vlan-id "&lt;auth-fail-VLAN-name&gt;"</code>	You can specify the name of the authentication fail VLAN
<code>set radius-timeout-overwrite</code>	You can enable or disable whether the session timeout for the RADIUS server will overwrite the local timeout.
<code>set policy-type 802.1X</code>	You can set the policy type to the 802.1x security policy.
<code>set authserver-timeout-vlan</code>	Enable or disable the RADIUS timeout VLAN on this interface to allow limited access for users when the RADIUS server times out before finishing authentication. By default, this option is disabled.
<code>set authserver-timeout-period</code>	You can set how many seconds the RADIUS server has to authenticate users. The range of values is 3-15 seconds; the default time is 3 seconds. This option is only visible when <code>authserver-timeout-vlan</code> is enabled.
<code>set authserver-timeout-vlanid "&lt;RADIUS-timeout-VLAN-name&gt;"</code>	The VLAN name that is used for users when the RADIUS server times out before finishing authentication. This option is only visible when <code>authserver-timeout-vlan</code> is enabled.

## Applying an 802.1x security policy to a FortiSwitch port

You can apply a different 802.1x security policy to each FortiSwitch port.

### Using the FortiGate GUI

**To apply an 802.1x security policy to a managed FortiSwitch port:**

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports*.
2. Select the + next to a FortiSwitch unit.

3. In the Security Policy column for a port, click + to select a security policy.
4. Select *OK* to apply the security policy to that port.

### Using the FortiGate CLI

To apply an 802.1x security policy to a managed FortiSwitch port, use the following commands:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <managed-switch>
    config ports
      edit <port>
        set port-security-policy <802.1x-policy>
      next
    end
  next
end
```

## Testing 802.1x authentication with monitor mode

Use the monitor mode to test your system configuration for 802.1x authentication. You can use monitor mode to test port-based authentication, MAC-based authentication, EAP pass-through mode, and MAC authentication bypass. Monitor mode is disabled by default. After you enable monitor mode, the network traffic will continue to flow, even if the users fail authentication.

To enable or disable monitor mode, use the following commands:

```
config switch-controller security-policy 802-1X
  edit "<policy_name>"
    set open-auth {enable | disable}
  next
end
```

## RADIUS accounting support

The FortiSwitch unit uses 802.1x-authenticated ports to send five types of RADIUS accounting messages to the RADIUS accounting server to support FortiGate RADIUS single sign-on:

- START—The FortiSwitch has been successfully authenticated, and the session has started.
- STOP—The FortiSwitch session has ended.
- INTERIM—Periodic messages sent based on the value set using the `set acct-interim-interval` command.
- ON—FortiSwitch will send this message when the switch is turned on.
- OFF—FortiSwitch will send this message when the switch is shut down.

You can specify more than one value to be sent in the RADIUS Service-Type attribute. Use a space between multiple values.

Use the following commands to set up RADIUS accounting so that FortiOS can send accounting messages to managed FortiSwitch units:

```
config user radius
  edit <RADIUS_server_name>
    set acct-interim-interval <seconds>
```



```

set switch-controller-service-type {administrative | authenticate-only | callback-
    administrative | callback-framed | callback-login | callback-nas-prompt | call-
    check | framed | login | nas-prompt | outbound}
config accounting-server
    edit <entry_ID>
        set status {enable | disable}
        set server <server_IP_address>
        set secret <secret_key>
        set port <port_number>
    next
end
next
end

```

## RADIUS change of authorization (CoA) support

For increased security, each subnet interface that will be receiving CoA requests must be configured with the `set allowaccess radius-acct` command.

Starting in FortiSwitchOS 6.2.1, RADIUS accounting and CoA support EAP and MAB 802.1x authentication.

The FortiSwitch unit supports two types of RADIUS CoA messages:

- CoA messages to change session authorization attributes (such as data filters and the session-timeout setting) during an active session.
- Disconnect messages (DMs) to flush an existing session. For MAC-based authentication, all other sessions are unchanged, and the port stays up. For port-based authentication, only one session is deleted.

RADIUS CoA messages use the following Fortinet proprietary attribute:

```
Fortinet-Host-Port-AVPair 42 string
```

The format of the value is as follows:

Attribute	Value	Description
Fortinet-Host-Port-AVPair	action=bounce-port	The FortiSwitch unit disconnects all sessions on a port. The port goes down for 10 seconds and then up again.
Fortinet-Host-Port-AVPair	action=disable-port	The FortiSwitch unit disconnects all session on a port. The port goes down until the user resets it.
Fortinet-Host-Port-AVPair	action=reauth-port	The FortiSwitch unit forces the reauthentication of the current session.

In addition, RADIUS CoA use the session-timeout attribute:

Attribute	Value	Description
session-timeout	<session_timeout_value>	The FortiSwitch unit disconnects a session after the specified number of seconds of idleness. This value must be more than 60 seconds. <b>NOTE:</b> To use the session-timeout attribute, you must enable the <code>set radius-timeout-overwrite</code> command first.

The FortiSwitch unit sends the following Error-Cause codes in RADIUS CoA-NAK and Disconnect-NAK messages.

Error Cause	Error Code	Description
Unsupported Attribute	401	This error is a fatal error, which is sent if a request contains an attribute that is not supported.
NAS Identification Mismatch	403	This error is a fatal error, which is sent if one or more NAS-Identifier Attributes do not match the identity of the NAS receiving the request.
Invalid Attribute Value	407	This error is a fatal error, which is sent if a CoA-Request or Disconnect-Request message contains an attribute with an unsupported value.
Session Context Not Found	503	This error is a fatal error if the session context identified in the CoA-Request or Disconnect-Request message does not exist on the NAS.

## Configuring CoA and disconnect messages

Use the following commands to enable a FortiSwitch unit to receive CoA and disconnect messages from a RADIUS server:

```
config system interface
    edit "mgmt"
        set ip <address> <netmask>
        set allowaccess <access_types>
        set type physical
    next
config user radius
    edit <RADIUS_server_name>
        set radius-coa {enable | disable}
        set radius-port <port_number>
        set secret <secret_key>
        set server <server_name_IPv4>
    end
```

Variable	Description
<b>config system interface</b>	
ip <address> <netmask>	Enter the interface IP address and netmask.
allowaccess <access_types>	Enter the types of management access permitted on this interface. Valid types are as follows: http https ping snmp ssh telnet radius-acct. Separate each type with a space. You must include radius-acct to receive CoA and disconnect messages.
<RADIUS_server_name>	Enter the name of the RADIUS server that will be sending CoA and disconnect messages to the FortiSwitch unit. By default, the messages use port 3799.

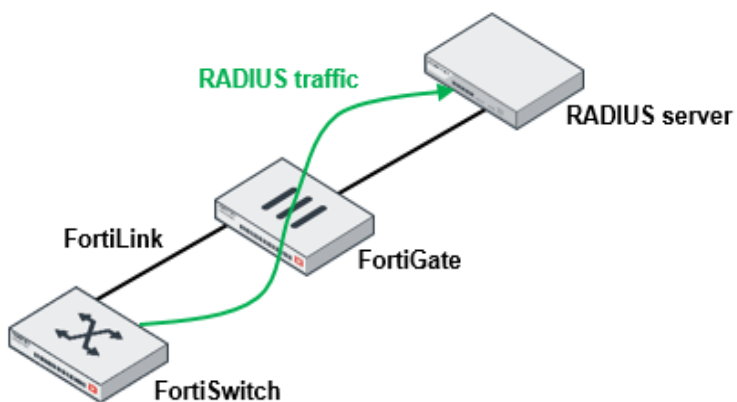
Variable	Description
<b>config user radius</b>	
radius-coa {enable   disable}	Enable or disable whether the FortiSwitch unit will accept CoA and disconnect messages. The default is disable.
radius-port <port_number>	Enter the RADIUS port number. By default, the value is 0 for FortiOS, which uses port 1812 for the FortiSwitch unit in FortiLink mode.
secret <secret_key>	Enter the shared secret key for authentication with the RADIUS server. There is no default.
server <server_name_IPv4>	Enter the domain name or IPv4 address for the RADIUS server. There is no default.

## Example: RADIUS CoA

The following example uses the FortiOS CLI to enable the FortiSwitch unit to receive CoA and disconnect messages from the specified RADIUS server:

```
config switch-controller security-policy local-access
  edit default
    set internal-allowaccess ping https http ssh snmp telnet radius-acct
  next
end
config user radius
  edit "Radius-188-200"
    set radius-coa enable
    set radius-port 0
    set secret ENC
      +2NyBcp8JF3/OijWl/w5nOC++aDKQPWnlC8Ug2HKwn4RcmhqVYE+q07yI9eSDhtiIw63kR/oMBLGwFQoe
      ZfOQWengIlGTb+YQo/lYJn1V3Nwp9sdkcblfyayfc9gTeqe+mFltKl5IWNl7WRYiJC8sxaF9Iyr2/l4hp
      CiVUMiPOU6fSrj
    set server "10.105.188.200"
  next
end
```

## 802.1x authentication deployment example



To control network access, you can configure 802.1x authentication from a FortiGate unit managing FortiSwitch units. A supplicant connected to a port on the switch must be authenticated by a RADIUS/Diameter server to gain access to the network.

To use the RADIUS server for authentication, you must configure the server before configuring the users or user groups on the FortiSwitch unit. You also need a firewall policy on the FortiGate unit to allow traffic from the FortiSwitch unit to the RADIUS server.

**To create a firewall policy to allow the FortiSwitch unit to reach the RADIUS server:**

```
config firewall policy
  edit 1
    set name "fortilink-to-radius"
    set srcintf "fortilink"
    set dstintf "accounting-server"
    set action accept
    set service "ALL"
    set nat enable
  end
```

**To create a group for users who will be authenticated by 802.1x:**

```
config user radius
  edit "dot1x-radius"
    set server "192.168.174.10"
    set secret ENC ***
    set radius-port 1812
    config accounting-server
      edit 1
        set status enable
        set server "192.168.174.10"
        set secret ENC ***
        set port 1813
      next
    end
  next
end

config user group
  edit "radius users"
    set member "dot1x-radius"
  next
end
```

**To create an 802.1x security policy:**

You can create an 802.1x security policy using the FortiGate GUI by going to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Security Policies* and selecting *Create New*.

```
config switch-controller security-policy 802-1X
  edit "802-1X-policy-default"
    set security-mode 802.1X-mac-based
    set user-group "dot1x-local"
    set mac-auth-bypass enable
    set eap-passthru enable
    set guest-vlan enable
```

```
    set guest-vlan-id "guest-VLAN"
    set auth-fail-vlan enable
    set auth-fail-vlan-id "auth-fail-VLAN"
    set radius-timeout-overwrite disable
  next
end
```

### To configure the global 802.1x settings:

```
config switch-controller 802-1X-settings
  set link-down-auth no-action
  set reauth-period 90
  set max-reauth-attempt 4
end
```

### To apply an 802.1x security policy to a managed FortiSwitch port:

You can apply an 802.1x security policy to a managed FortiSwitch port using the FortiGate GUI by going to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports*.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S548DN4K16000360
    config ports
      edit "port1"
        set dhcp-snooping trusted
        set dhcp-snoop-option82-trust enable
        set port-security-policy "802-1X-policydefault"
      next
    end
```

## Detailed deployment notes

- Using more than one security group (with the `set security-groups` command) per security profile is not supported.
- CoA and single sign-on are supported only by the CLI in this release.
- RADIUS CoA is supported in standalone mode. In addition, RADIUS CoA is supported in FortiLink mode when NAT is disabled in the firewall policy (`set nat disable` under the `config firewall policy` command), and the interfaces on the link between the FortiGate unit and FortiSwitch unit are assigned routable addresses other than 169.254.1.x.
- The FortiSwitch unit supports using FortiAuthenticator, FortiConnect, Microsoft Network Policy Server (NPS), Aruba ClearPass, and Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) as the RADIUS server for CoA and RSSO.
- Each RADIUS CoA server can support only one accounting manager in this release.
- RADIUS accounting/CoA/VLAN-by-name features are supported only with `eap-passthru enable`.
- Fortinet recommends a unique secret key for each accounting server.
- For CoA to correctly function with FortiAuthenticator or FortiConnect, you must include the User-Name attribute (you can optionally include the Framed-IP-Address attribute) or the User-Name and Calling-Station-ID attributes in the CoA request.
- To obtain a valid Framed-IP-Address attribute value, you need to manually configure DHCP snooping in the 802.1x-authenticated ports of your VLAN network for both port and MAC modes.
- Port-based basic statistics for RADIUS accounting messages are supported in the Accounting Stop request.
- By default, the accounting server is disabled. You must enable the accounting server with the `set status enable` command.

- The default port for FortiAuthenticator single sign-on is 1813 for the FortiSwitch unit.
- In MAC-based authentication, the maximum number of client MAC addresses is 20. Each model has its own maximum limit.
- Static MAC addresses and sticky MAC addresses are mechanisms for manual/local authorization; 802.1x is a mechanism for protocol-based authorization. Do not mix them.
- Fortinet recommends an 802.1x setup rate of 5 to 10 sessions per second.
- Starting in FortiSwitch 6.2.0, when 802.1x authentication is configured, the EAP pass-through mode (`set eap-passthru`) is enabled by default.
- For information about the RADIUS attributes supported by FortiSwitchOS, refer to the “Supported attributes for RADIUS CoA and RSSO” appendix in the *FortiSwitchOS Administration Guide—Standalone Mode*.

## Configuring the DHCP trust setting

The DHCP blocking feature monitors the DHCP traffic from untrusted sources (for example, typically host ports and unknown DHCP servers) that might initiate traffic attacks or other hostile actions. To prevent this, DHCP blocking filters messages on untrusted ports.

Set the port as a trusted or untrusted DHCP-snooping interface:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set dhcp-snooping {trusted | untrusted}
      end
    end
  end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port1
        set dhcp-snooping trusted
      end
    end
  end
```

## Configuring the DHCP server access list

Starting in FortiOS 7.0.1, you can configure which DHCP servers that DHCP snooping includes in the server access list. These servers on the list are allowed to respond to DHCP requests.

**NOTE:** You can add 255 servers per table. The maximum number of DHCP servers that can be added to all instances of the table is 2,048. This maximum is a global limit and applies across all VLANs.

Configuring the DHCP server access list consists of the following steps:

1. Enable the DHCP server access list on a VDOM level or switch-wide level.  
By default, the server access list is disabled, which means that all DHCP servers are allowed. When the server access list is enabled, only the DHCP servers in the server access list are allowed.

**2. Configure the VLAN settings for the managed switch port.**

You can set the DHCP server access list to `global` to use the VDOM or system-wide setting, or you can set the DHCP server access list to `enable` to override the global settings and enable the DHCP server access list.

In the managed FortiSwitch unit, all ports are untrusted by default, and DHCP snooping is disabled on all untrusted ports. You must set the managed switch port to be trusted to allow DHCP snooping.

**3. Configure DHCP snooping and the DHCP access list for the managed FortiSwitch interface.**

By default, DHCP snooping is disabled on the managed FortiSwitch interface.

**To enable the DHCP sever access list on a global level:**

```
config switch-controller global
    set dhcp-server-access-list enable
end
```

For example:

```
FGT_A (vdom1) # config switch-controller global
FGT_A (global) # set dhcp-server-access-list enable
FGT_A (global) # end
```

**To configure the VLAN settings:**

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
        set dhcp-server-access-list {global | enable | disable}
        config ports
            edit <port_name>
                set vlan <VLAN_name>
                set dhcp-snooping trusted
            next
        end
    next
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "S524DN4K16000116"
        set fsw-wan1-peer "port11"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        set dhcp-server-access-list enable
        config ports
            edit "port19"
                set vlan "_default.13"
                set allowed-vlans "quarantine.13"
                set untagged-vlans "quarantine.13"
                set dhcp-snooping trusted
                set export-to "vdom1"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To configure the interface settings:**

```
config system interface
    edit <VLAN_name>
```

```
set switch-controller-dhcp-snooping enable
config dhcp-snooping-server-list
  edit <DHCP_server_name>
    set server-ip <IPv4_address_of_DHCP_server>
  next
end
next
end
```

For example:

```
config system interface
  edit "_default.13"
    set vdom "vdom1"
    set ip 5.4.4.1 255.255.255.0
    set allowaccess ping https ssh http fabric
    set alias "_default.port11"
    set snmp-index 30
    set switch-controller-dhcp-snooping enable
    config dhcp-snooping-server-list
      edit "server1"
        set server-ip 10.20.20.1
      next
    end
    set switch-controller-feature default-vlan
    set interface "port11"
    set vlanid 1
  next
end
```

## Configuring dynamic ARP inspection (DAI)

DAI prevents man-in-the-middle attacks and IP address spoofing by checking that packets from untrusted ports have valid IP-MAC-address binding. DAI allows only valid ARP requests and responses to be forwarded.

To use DAI, you must first enable the DHCP-snooping feature, enable DAI, and then enable DAI for each VLAN. By default, DAI is disabled on all VLANs.

After enabling DHCP snooping with the `set switch-controller-dhcp-snooping enable` command, use the following CLI commands to enable DAI and then enable DAI for a VLAN:

```
config system interface
  edit vsw.test
    set switch-controller-arp-inspection {enable | disable}
  end

config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        arp-inspection-trust <untrusted | trusted>
      next
    end
  next
end
```



Use the following CLI command to check DAI statistics for a FortiSwitch unit:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info arp-inspection stats <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

Use the following CLI command to delete DAI statistics for a specific VLAN:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info arp-inspection stats-clear <VLAN_ID> <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

## Configuring IPv4 source guard

IPv4 source guard protects a network from IPv4 spoofing by only allowing traffic on a port from specific IPv4 addresses. Traffic from other IPv4 addresses is discarded. The discarded addresses are not logged.

IPv4 source guard allows traffic from the following sources:

- Static entries—IP addresses that have been manually associated with MAC addresses.
- Dynamic entries—IP addresses that have been learned through DHCP snooping.

By default, IPv4 source guard is disabled. You must enable it on each port that you want protected.

If you add more than 2,048 IP source guard entries from a FortiGate unit, you will get an error. When there is a conflict between static entries and dynamic entries, static entries take precedence over dynamic entries.

IPv4 source guard can be configured in FortiOS only for managed FortiSwitch units that support IP source guard. The following FortiSwitch models support IP source guard:

- FSR-124D
- FS-224D-FPOE
- FS-248D
- FS-424D-POE
- FS-424D-FPOE
- FS-448D-POE
- FS-448D-FPOE
- FS-424D
- FS-448D
- FSW-2xxE

Configuring IPv4 source guard consists of the following steps:

1. [Enabling IPv4 source guard on page 153](#)
2. [Creating static entries on page 154](#)
3. [Checking the IPv4 source-guard entries on page 155](#)

## Enabling IPv4 source guard

You must enable IPv4 source guard in the FortiOS CLI before you can configure it.

**To enable IPv4 source guard:**

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

```
config ports
  edit <port_name>
    set ip-source-guard enable
  next
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S424DF4K15000024
    config ports
      edit port20
        set ip-source-guard enable
      next
    end
  end
```

## Creating static entries

After you enable IPv4 source guard in the FortiOS CLI, you can create static entries in the FortiOS CLI by binding IPv4 addresses with MAC addresses. For IPv4 source-guard dynamic entries, you need to configure DHCP snooping. See [Configuring DHCP blocking, STP, and loop guard on managed FortiSwitch ports on page 87](#).

**To create static entries:**

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ip-source-guard
      edit <port_name>
        config binding-entry
          edit <id>
            set ip <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>
            set mac <XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX>
          next
        end
      next
    end
  next
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S424DF4K15000024
    config ip-source-guard
      edit port4
        config binding-entry
          edit 1
            set ip 172.168.20.1
            set mac 00:21:cc:d2:76:72
          next
        end
      next
    end
  next
end
```

end

## Checking the IPv4 source-guard entries

After you configure IPv4 source guard , you can check the entries.

Static entries are manually added by the `config switch ip-source-guard` command. Dynamic entries are added by DHCP snooping.

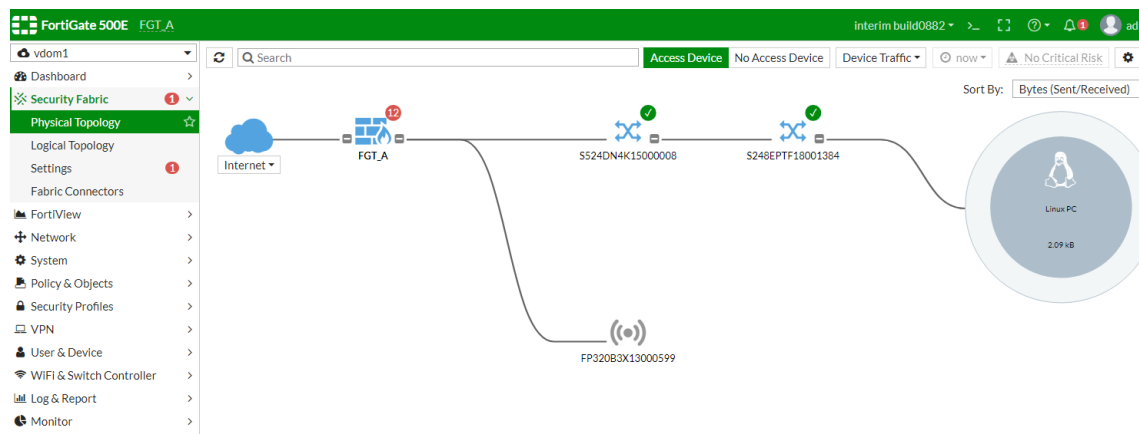
Use this command in the FortiOS CLI to display all IP source-guard entries:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info ip-source-guard hardware <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

## Security Fabric showing

This example shows one of the key components in the concept of Security Fabric: FortiSwitches in FortiLink. In the FortiGate GUI, you can see the whole picture of the Security Fabric working for your network security.

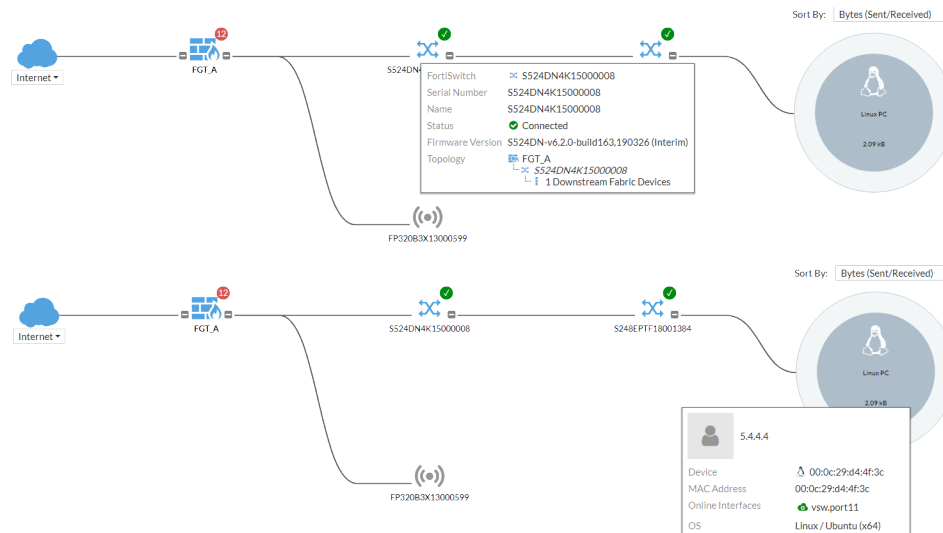
### Sample topology



**To show Security Fabric information:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric > Physical Topology*.
2. To see the connection between FortiGates and managed FortiSwitches, hover the pointer over the icons to see

information about each network element.



## Blocking intra-VLAN traffic

You can block intra-VLAN traffic by aggregating traffic using solely the FortiGate unit. This prevents direct client-to-client traffic visibility at the layer-2 VLAN layer. Clients can only communicate with the FortiGate unit. After the client traffic reaches the FortiGate unit, the FortiGate unit can then determine whether to allow various levels of access to the client by shifting the client's network VLAN as appropriate, if allowed by a firewall policy and proxy ARP is enabled.

Use `enable` to allow traffic only to and from the FortiGate and to block FortiSwitch port-to-port traffic on the specified VLAN. Use `disable` to allow normal traffic on the specified VLAN.

### Using the FortiGate GUI

1. Go to *Network > Interfaces*.
2. Select the interface and then select *Edit*.
3. In the *Edit Interface* form, enable *Block intra-VLAN traffic* under *Network*.

Network	
Device detection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
IGMP snooping	<input type="checkbox"/>
DHCP snooping	<input type="checkbox"/>
Block intra-VLAN traffic	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Security mode	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Captive Portal
Authentication portal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Local <input type="checkbox"/> External
User access	<input type="checkbox"/> Restricted to Groups <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow all
Exempt sources	<input type="text" value="+"/>
Exempt destinations/services	<input type="text" value="+"/>
Redirect after Captive Portal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Original Request <input type="checkbox"/> Specific URL

## Using the FortiGate CLI

```
config system interface
  edit <VLAN name>
    set switch-controller-access-vlan {enable | disable}
  next
end
```

### NOTE:

- IPv6 is not supported between clients when intra-VLAN traffic blocking is enabled.
- Intra-VLAN traffic blocking is not supported when the FortiLink interface type is hardware switch or software switch.
- When intra-VLAN traffic blocking is enabled, to allow traffic between hosts, you need to configure the proxy ARP with the `config system proxy-arp` CLI command and configure a firewall policy. For example:

```
config system proxy-arp
  edit 1
    set interface "V100"
    set ip 1.1.1.1
    set end-ip 1.1.1.200
  next
end

config firewall policy
  edit 4
    set name "Allow intra-VLAN traffic"
    set srcintf "V100"
    set dstintf "V100"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
  next
end
```

## Quarantines

Administrators can use MAC addresses to quarantine hosts and users connected to a FortiSwitch unit. Quarantined MAC addresses are isolated from the rest of the network and LAN.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Quarantining MAC addresses on page 158](#)
- [Using quarantine with DHCP on page 161](#)
- [Using quarantine with 802.1x MAC-based authentication on page 161](#)
- [Viewing quarantine entries on page 163](#)
- [Releasing MAC addresses from quarantine on page 166](#)

## Quarantining MAC addresses

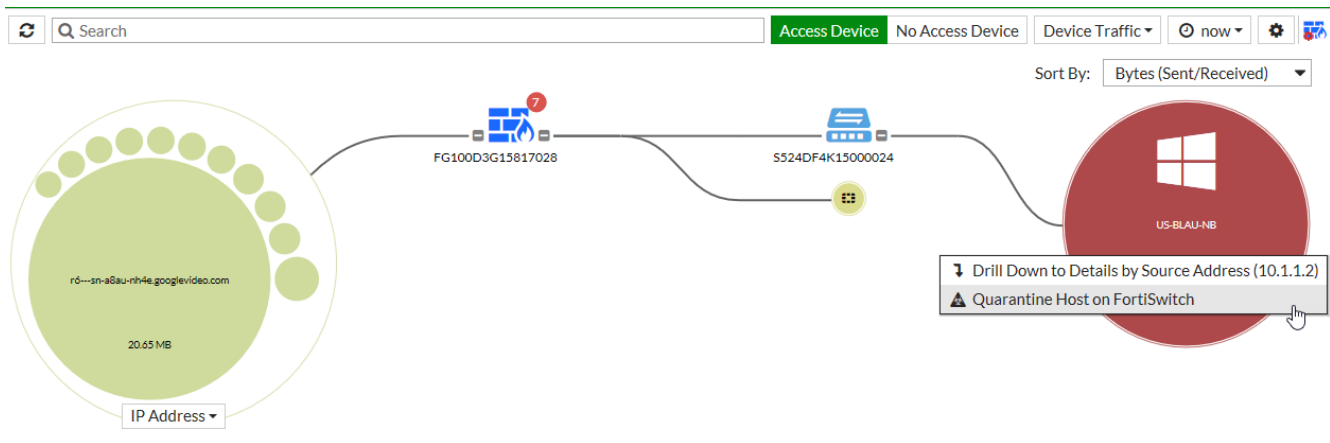
You can use the FortiGate GUI or CLI to quarantine a MAC address.

**NOTE:** If you have multiple FortiLink interfaces, only the first quarantine VLAN is created successfully (with an IP address of 10.254.254.254). Additional quarantine VLANs will have an empty IP address.

### Using the FortiGate GUI

In the FortiGate GUI, the quarantine feature is automatically enabled when you quarantine a host.

1. Select the host to quarantine.
  - Go to *Security Fabric > Physical Topology*, right-click on a host, and select *Quarantine Host on FortiSwitch*.
  - Go to *Security Fabric > Logical Topology*, right-click on a host, and select *Quarantine Host on FortiSwitch*.
  - Go to *FortiView > Sources*, right-click on an entry in the Source column, and select *Quarantine Host on FortiSwitch*.
2. Select *Accept* to confirm that you want to quarantine the host.



### Using the FortiGate CLI

**NOTE:** Previously, this feature used the `config switch-controller quarantine` CLI command.

There are two kinds of quarantines:

- Quarantine-by-VLAN sends quarantined device traffic to the FortiGate unit on a separate quarantine VLAN (starting in FortiOS 6.0.0 and FortiSwitchOS 6.0.0).
- Quarantine-by-redirect redirects quarantined device traffic to a firewall address group on the FortiGate unit (starting in FortiOS 6.4.0 and FortiSwitchOS 6.4.0).

By default, the quarantine feature is enabled. When you upgrade a FortiGate unit from an older to a newer firmware version, the FortiGate unit uses the quarantine feature status from the older configuration. If the quarantine feature was disabled in the older configuration, it will be disabled after the upgrade.

You can add MAC addresses to be quarantined even when the quarantine feature is disabled. The MAC addresses are only quarantined when the quarantine feature is enabled.

The table size limit for the quarantine entry is 512. There is no limit for how many MAC addresses can be quarantined per quarantine entry.

Optionally, you can configure a traffic policy for quarantined devices to control how much bandwidth and burst they use and which class of service (CoS) queue they are assigned to. Without a traffic policy, you cannot control how much network resources quarantined devices use.

Starting in FortiOS 6.4.1, quarantine-by-VLAN is the default. If you have a quarantine-by-VLAN configuration and want to migrate to a quarantine-by-redirect configuration:

1. Disable quarantine.
2. Change the quarantine-mode to `by-redirect`.
3. Remove the quarantine VLAN from the switch ports.
4. Enable quarantine.

### To set up a quarantine in FortiOS:

```
config switch-controller global
    set quarantine-mode {by-vlan | by-redirect}
end

config user quarantine
    set quarantine enable
    set traffic-policy <traffic_policy_name>
    set firewall-groups <firewall_address_group>
    config targets
        edit <quarantine_entry_name>
            set description <string>
            config macs
                edit <MAC_address_1>
                    set drop {enable | disable}
                next
                edit <MAC_address_2>
                    set drop {enable | disable}
                next
                edit <MAC_address_3>
                    set drop {enable | disable}
                next
            end
        end
    end
end
```

Option	Description
quarantine-mode {by-vlan   by-redirect}	<p>Select the quarantine mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>by-vlan</code> sends quarantined device traffic to the FortiGate unit on a separate quarantine VLAN. This mode is the default.</li> <li>• <code>by-redirect</code> redirects quarantined device traffic to a firewall address group on the FortiGate unit.</li> </ul>
traffic-policy <traffic_policy_name>	<p>Optional. A name for the traffic policy that controls quarantined devices. If you do add a traffic policy, you need to configure it with the <code>config switch-controller traffic-policy</code> command.</p>

Option	Description
firewall-groups <firewall_address_group>	Optional. By default, the firewall address group is QuarantinedDevices. If you are using quarantine-by-redirect, you must use the default firewall address group.
quarantine_entry_name	A name for this quarantine entry.
description <string>	Optional. A description of the MAC addresses being quarantined.
MAC_address_1, MAC_address_2, MAC_address_3	A layer-2 MAC address in the following format: 12:34:56:aa:bb:cc
drop {enable   disable}	Enable to drop quarantined device traffic. Disable to send quarantined device traffic to the FortiGate unit.

For example:

```
config switch-controller global
    set quarantine-mode by-redirect
end

config user quarantine
    set quarantine enable
    set traffic-policy qtrafficp
    set firewall-groups QuarantinedDevices
    config targets
        edit quarantine1
            config macs
                set description "infected by virus"
                edit 00:00:00:aa:bb:cc
                    set drop disable
                next
                edit 00:11:22:33:44:55
                    set drop disable
                next
                edit 00:01:02:03:04:05
                    set drop disable
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

### To configure a traffic policy for quarantined devices in FortiOS:

```
config switch-controller traffic-policy
    edit <traffic_policy_name>
        set description <string>
        set policer-status enable
        set guaranteed-bandwidth <0-524287000>
        set guaranteed-burst <0-4294967295>
        set maximum-burst <0-4294967295>
        set cos-queue <0-7>
    end
```



Option	Description
traffic-policy <traffic_policy_name>	Enter a name for the traffic policy that controls quarantined devices.
description <string>	Enter an optional description of the traffic policy.
policer-status enable	Enable the policer configuration to control quarantined devices. It is enabled by default.
guaranteed-bandwidth <0-524287000>	Enter the guaranteed bandwidth in kbps. The maximum value is 524287000. The default value is 0.
guaranteed-burst <0-4294967295>	Enter the guaranteed burst size in bytes. The maximum value is 4294967295. The default value is 0.
maximum-burst <0-4294967295>	The maximum burst size is in bytes. The maximum value is 4294967295. The default value is 0.
set cos-queue <0-7>	Set the class of service for the VLAN traffic. Use the <code>unset cos-queue</code> command to disable this setting.

For example:

```
config switch-controller traffic-policy
  edit qtrafficp
    set description "quarantined traffic policy"
    set policer-status enable
    set guaranteed-bandwidth 10000
    set guaranteed-burst 10000
    set maximum-burst 10000
    unset cos-queue
  end
```

## Using quarantine with DHCP

When a device using DHCP is quarantined, the device becomes inaccessible until the DHCP is renewed. To avoid this problem, enable the bounce-quarantined-link option, which shuts down the switch port where the quarantined device was last seen and then brings it back up again. Bouncing the port when the device is quarantined and when the device is released from quarantine causes the DHCP to be renewed so that the device is connected to the correct network. By default, the bounce-quarantined-link option is disabled.

**To bounce the switch port where a quarantined device was last seen:**

```
config switch-controller global
  set bounce-quarantined-link {enable | disable}
end
```

## Using quarantine with 802.1x MAC-based authentication

After a device is authorized with IEEE 802.1x MAC-based authentication, you can quarantine that device. If the device was quarantined before 802.1x MAC-based authentication was enabled, the device's traffic remains in the quarantine VLAN 4093 after 802.1x MAC-based authentication is enabled.

**To use quarantines with IEEE 802.1x MAC-based authentication:**

1. By default, detecting the quarantine VLAN is enabled on a global level on the managed FortiSwitch unit. You can verify that quarantine-vlan is enabled with the following commands:

```
S448DF3X16000118 # config switch global

S448DF3X16000118 (global) # config port-security

S448DF3X16000118 (port-security) # get
link-down-auth : set-unauth
mab-reauth : disable
quarantine-vlan : enable
reauth-period : 60
max-reauth-attempt : 0
```

2. By default, 802.1x MAC-based authentication and quarantine VLAN detection are enabled on a port level on the managed FortiSwitch unit. You can verify the settings for the port-security-mode and quarantine-vlan. For example:

```
S448DF3X16000118 (port17) # show switch interface port17
config switch interface
  edit "port17"
    set allowed-vlans 4093
    set untagged-vlans 4093
    set security-groups "group1"
    set snmp-index 17
    config port-security
      set auth-fail-vlan disable
      set eap-passthru enable
      set framevid-apply enable
      set guest-auth-delay 30
      set guest-vlan disable
      set mac-auth-bypass enable
      set open-auth disable
      set port-security-mode 802.1X-mac-based
      set quarantine-vlan enable
      set radius-timeout-overwrite disable
      set auth-fail-vlanid 200
      set guest-vlanid 100
    end
  next
end
```

3. On the FortiGate unit, quarantine a MAC address. For example:

```
config user quarantine
  edit "quarantine1"
    config macs
      edit 00:05:65:ad:15:03
    next
  end
next
end
```

4. The FortiGate unit pushes the MAC-VLAN binding to the managed FortiSwitch unit. You can verify that the managed FortiSwitch unit received the MAC-VLAN binding with the following command:

```
S448DF3X16000118 # show switch vlan 4093
config switch vlan
  edit 4093
    set description "qtn.FLNK10"
    set dhcp-snooping enable
    set access-vlan enable
    config member-by-mac
      edit 1
        set mac 00:05:65:ad:15:03
      next
    end
  next
end
```

5. The 802.1x session shows that the MAC address is quarantined in VLAN 4093. You can verify that the managed FortiSwitch port has the quarantined MAC address. For example:

```
S448DF3X16000118 # diagnose switch 8 status port17

port17: Mode: mac-based (mac-by-pass enable)
Link: Link up
Port State: authorized: ( )
EAP pass-through mode : Enable
Quarantine VLAN (4093) detection : Enable
Native Vlan : 1
Allowed Vlan list: 1,4093
Untagged Vlan list: 1,4093
Guest VLAN :
Auth-Fail Vlan :

Switch sessions 3/480, Local port sessions:1/20
Client MAC Type Vlan Dynamic-Vlan
Quarantined
00:05:65:ad:15:03 802.1x 1 4093

Sessions info:
00:50:56:ad:51:81 Type=802.1x, PEAP, state=AUTHENTICATED, etime=0, eap_cnt=41
  params:reAuth=1800
```

6. The MAC address table also shows the MAC address in VLAN 4093. You can verify the entries in the MAC address table with the following commands:

```
S448DF3X16000118 # diagnose switch vlan assignment mac list
00:05:65:ad:15:03 VLAN: 4093 Installed: yes
Source: 802.1X-MAC-Radius
Description: port17

S448DF3X16000118 # diagnose switch mac list | grep "VLAN: 4093"
MAC: 00:05:65:ad:15:03 VLAN: 4093 Port: port17(port-id 17)
```

## Viewing quarantine entries

Quarantine entries are created on the FortiGate unit that is managing the FortiSwitch unit.

## Using the FortiGate GUI

1. Go to *Monitor > Quarantine Monitor*.
2. Click *Quarantined on FortiSwitch*. The Quarantined on FortiSwitch button is only available if a device is detected behind the FortiSwitch unit, which requires Device Detection to be enabled.

Refresh	Delete	Remove All	<input type="text" value="Search"/>	All	Quarantined on FortiSwitch	Banned IP
Type	Details	Source	Expires	Description		
MAC address	18:db:f2:32:52:e7 (US-BLAU-NB)	Administrative	Never	Hostname: US-BLAU-NB, Use...		

## Using the FortiGate CLI

Use the following command to view the quarantine list of MAC addresses:

```
show user quarantine
```

For example:

```
show user quarantine

config user quarantine
  set quarantine enable
  config targets
    edit quarantine1
      config macs
        set description "infected by virus"
        edit 00:00:00:aa:bb:cc
        next
        edit 00:11:22:33:44:55
        next
        edit 00:01:02:03:04:05
        next
      end
    end
  end
end
```

When the quarantine feature is enabled on the FortiGate unit, it creates a quarantine VLAN (qtn.<FortiLink\_port\_name>) and a quarantine DHCP server (with the quarantine VLAN as default gateway) on the virtual domain. The quarantine VLAN is applied to the allowed and untagged VLANs on all connected FortiSwitch ports.

Use the following command to view the quarantine VLAN:

```
show system interface qtn.<FortiLink_port_name>
```

For example:

```
show system interface qtn.port7

config system interface
  edit "qtn.port7"
    set vdom "vdom1"
    set ip 10.254.254.254 255.255.255.0
    set description "Quarantine VLAN"
    set security-mode captive-portal
    set replacemsg-override-group "auth-intf-qtn.port7"
```

```
set device-identification enable
set device-identification-active-scan enable
set snmp-index 34
set switch-controller-access-vlan enable
set color 6
set interface "port7"
set vlanid 4093
next
end
```

Use the following commands to view the quarantine DHCP server:

```
show system dhcp server
config system dhcp server
edit 2
set dns-service default
set default-gateway 10.254.254.254
set netmask 255.255.255.0
set interface "qtn.port7"
config ip-range
edit 1
set start-ip 10.254.254.192
set end-ip 10.254.254.253
next
end
set timezone-option default
next
end
```

Use the following command to view how the quarantine VLAN is applied to the allowed and untagged VLANs on all connected FortiSwitch ports:

```
show switch-controller managed-switch
```

For example:

```
show switch-controller managed-switch

config switch-controller managed-switch
edit "FS1D483Z15000036"
set fsw-wan1-peer "port7"
set fsw-wan1-admin enable
set version 1
set dynamic-capability 503
config ports
edit "port1"
set vlan "vsw.port7"
set allowed-vlans "qtn.port7"
set untagged-vlans "qtn.port7"
next
edit "port2"
set vlan "vsw.port7"
set allowed-vlans "qtn.port7"
set untagged-vlans "qtn.port7"
next
edit "port3"
set vlan "vsw.port7"
```

```

        set allowed-vlans "qtn.port7"
        set untagged-vlans "qtn.port7"
    next
    ...
end
end

```

## Releasing MAC addresses from quarantine

### Using the FortiGate GUI

1. Go to *Monitor > Quarantine Monitor*.
2. Click *Quarantined on FortiSwitch*.
3. Right-click on one of the entries and select *Delete* or *Remove All*.
4. Click *OK* to confirm your choice.

Refresh		Delete		Remove All		Search		All		Quarantined on FortiSwitch	Banned IP
Type		Details		Source		Expires		Description			
MAC address		18:00:00:00:00:00 (US-BLAU-NB)		Administrative		Never		Hostname: US-BLAU-NB, Use...			
		<div> Delete</div> <div> Remove All</div>									

### Using the FortiGate CLI

To release MAC addresses from quarantine, you can delete a single MAC address or delete a quarantine entry, which will delete all of the MAC addresses listed in the entry. You can also disable the quarantine feature, which releases all quarantined MAC addresses from quarantine.

#### To delete a single quarantined MAC address:

```

config user quarantine
  config targets
    edit <quarantine_entry_name>
      config macs
        delete <MAC_address_1>
      end
    end
  end
end

```

#### To delete all MAC addresses in a quarantine entry:

```

config user quarantine
  config targets
    delete <quarantine_entry_name>
  end
end

```

#### To disable the quarantine feature:

```

config user quarantine
  set quarantine disable

```

end

# Optimizing the FortiSwitch network

Starting in FortiOS 6.4.2 with FortiSwitchOS 6.4.2, you can check your FortiSwitch network and get recommendations on how to optimize it. If you agree with the configuration recommendations, you can accept them, and they are automatically applied.

Starting in FortiOS 7.0.8, a new test checks the FortiSwitchOS version on the managed switches. If the FortiSwitchOS version is 7.0.0 or higher, FortiOS recommends using the strict tunnel mode, which enforces the use of strong encryption. If the managed switches are running an older firmware version, FortiOS recommends upgrading to FortiSwitchOS 7.0.0 or higher.

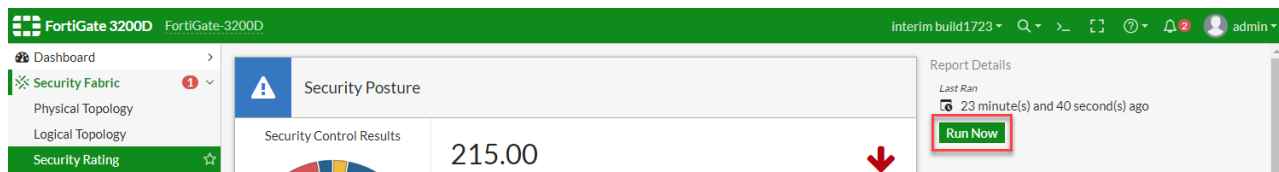
## To set the tunnel mode to strict in FortiOS:

```
config switch-controller system
    set tunnel-mode strict
end
```

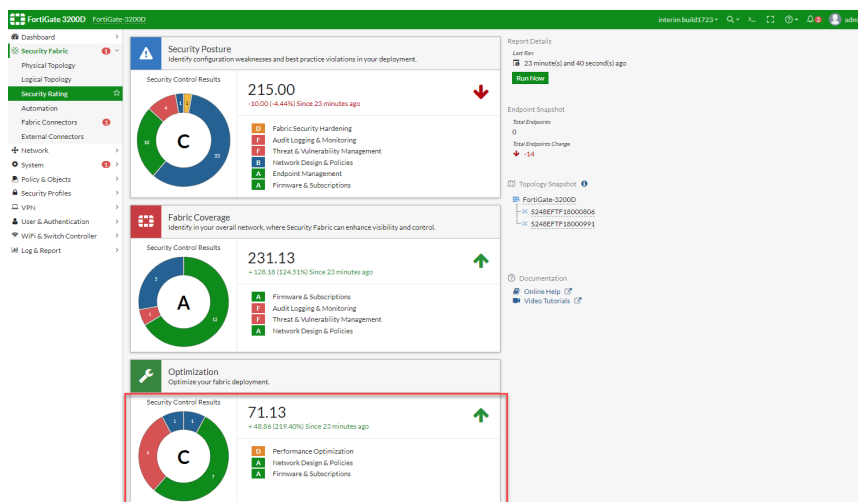
**NOTE:** The Security Rating feature is available only when VDOMs are disabled.

## To optimize your FortiSwitch network:

1. Go to *Security Fabric > Security Rating*.
2. Select *Run Now* (under *Report Details* in the right pane) to generate the Security Rating report.

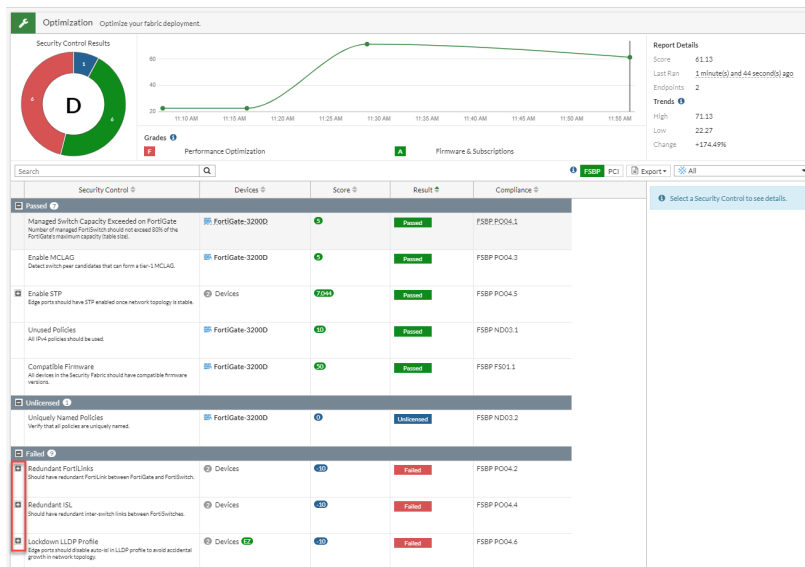


3. Select the *Optimization* section.

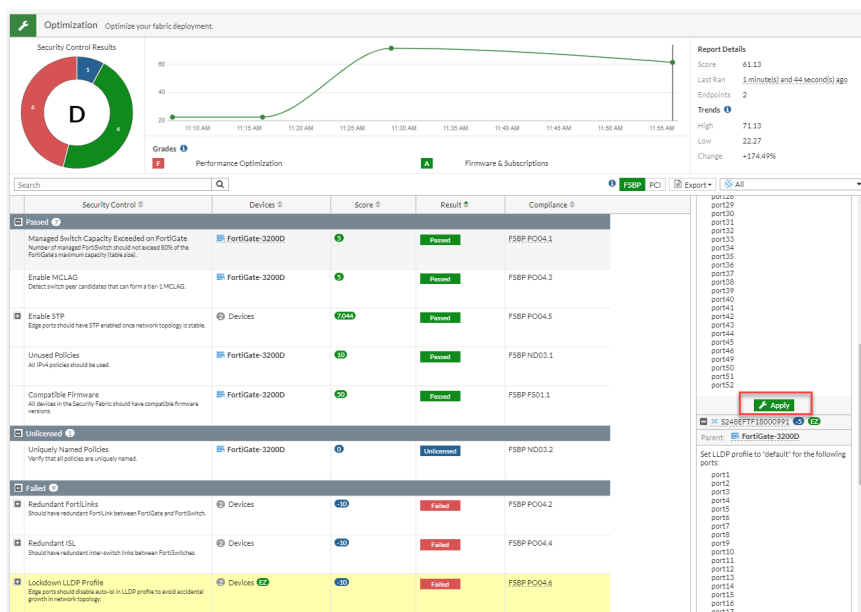


4. Under *Failed*, select + next to each item to see more details in the right pane.





5. If you agree with a suggestion in the *Recommendations* section, select *Apply* for the change to be made.



# Configuring QoS with managed FortiSwitch units

Quality of Service (QoS) provides the ability to set particular priorities for different applications, users, or data flows.

**NOTE:** The FortiGate unit does not support QoS for hard or soft switch ports.

The FortiSwitch unit supports the following QoS configuration capabilities:

- Mapping the IEEE 802.1p and Layer 3 QoS values (Differentiated Services and IP Precedence) to an outbound QoS queue number.
- Providing eight egress queues on each port.
- Policing the maximum data rate of egress traffic on the interface.
- If you select `weighted-random-early-detection` for the `drop-policy`, you can enable explicit congestion notification (ECN) marking to indicate that congestion is occurring without just dropping packets.

## To configure the QoS for managed FortiSwitch units:

### 1. Configure a Dot1p map.

A Dot1p map defines a mapping between IEEE 802.1p class of service (CoS) values (from incoming packets on a trusted interface) and the egress queue values. Values that are not explicitly included in the map will follow the default mapping, which maps each priority (0-7) to queue 0. If an incoming packet contains no CoS value, the switch assigns a CoS value of zero.

**NOTE:** Do not enable trust for both Dot1p and DSCP at the same time on the same interface. If you do want to trust both Dot1p and IP-DSCP, the FortiSwitch uses the latter value (DSCP) to determine the queue. The switch will use the Dot1p value and mapping only if the packet contains no DSCP value.

```
config switch-controller qos dot1p-map
  edit <Dot1p map name>
    set description <text>
    set priority-0 <queue number>
    set priority-1 <queue number>
    set priority-2 <queue number>
    set priority-3 <queue number>
    set priority-4 <queue number>
    set priority-5 <queue number>
    set priority-6 <queue number>
    set priority-7 <queue number>
  next
end
```

### 2. Configure a DSCP map. A DSCP map defines a mapping between IP precedence or DSCP values and the egress queue values. For IP precedence, you have the following choices:

- `network-control`—Network control
- `internetwork-control`—Internetwork control
- `critic-ecp`—Critic and emergency call processing (ECP)
- `flashoverride`—Flash override
- `flash`—Flash
- `immediate`—Immediate

- priority—Priority
- routine—Routine

```
config switch-controller qos ip-dscp-map
edit <DSCP map name>
set description <text>
configure map <map_name>
edit <entry name>
set cos-queue <COS queue number>
set dffserv {CS0 | CS1 | AF11 | AF12 | AF13 | CS2 | AF21 | AF22 | AF23 | CS3
| AF31 | AF32 | AF33 | CS4 | AF41 | AF42 | AF43 | CS5 | EF | CS6 | CS7}
set ip-precedence {network-control | internetwork-control | critic-ecp |
flashoverride | flash | immediate | priority | routine}
set value <DSCP raw value>
next
end
end
```

3. Configure the egress QoS policy. In a QoS policy, you set the scheduling mode for the policy and configure one or more CoS queues. Each egress port supports eight queues, and three scheduling modes are available:
  - With strict scheduling, the queues are served in descending order (of queue number), so higher number queues receive higher priority.
  - In simple round-robin mode, the scheduler visits each backlogged queue, servicing a single packet from each queue before moving on to the next one.
  - In weighted round-robin mode, each of the eight egress queues is assigned a weight value ranging from 0 to 63.

```
config switch-controller qos queue-policy
edit <QoS egress policy name>
set schedule {strict | round-robin | weighted}
config cos-queue
edit queue-<number>
set description <text>
set min-rate <rate in kbps>
set max-rate <rate in kbps>
set drop-policy {taildrop | weighted-random-early-detection}
set ecn {enable | disable}
set weight <weight value>
next
end
next
end
```

4. Configure the overall policy that will be applied to the switch ports.

```
config switch-controller qos qos-policy
edit <QoS egress policy name>
set default-cos <default CoS value 0-7>
set trust-dot1p-map <Dot1p map name>
set trust-ip-dscp-map <DSCP map name>
set queue-policy <queue policy name>
next
end
```

**5. Configure each switch port.**

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <switch-id>
    config ports
      edit <port>
        set qos-policy <CoS policy>
      next
    end
  next
end
```

**6. Check the QoS statistics on each switch port.**

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info qos-stats <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
```

## Configuring ECN for managed FortiSwitch devices

Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN) allows ECN enabled endpoints to notify each other when they are experiencing congestion. It is supported on the following FortiSwitch models: FS-3032E, FS-3032D, FS-1048E, FS-1048D, FS-5xxD series, and FS-4xxE series.

On the FortiGate unit that is managing the compatible FortiSwitch unit, ECN can be enabled for each class of service (CoS) queue to enable packet marking to drop eligible packets. The command is only available when the dropping policy is weighted random early detection. It is disabled by default.

**To configure FortiSwitch to enable ECN packet marking to drop eligible packets:**

```
config switch-controller qos queue-policy
  edit "ECN_marking"
    set schedule round-robin
    set rate-by kbps
    config cos-queue
      edit "queue-0"
        set drop-policy weighted-random-early-detection
        set ecn enable
      next
      edit "queue-1"
      next
      edit "queue-2"
      next
      ...
    end
  next
end
```

# Logging and monitoring

This section covers the following topics:

- [FortiSwitch log settings on page 173](#)
- [Configuring FortiSwitch port mirroring on page 174](#)
- [Configuring SNMP on page 177](#)
- [Configuring sFlow on page 182](#)
- [Configuring flow tracking and export on page 183](#)
- [Configuring flow control and ingress pause metering on page 185](#)

## FortiSwitch log settings

You can export the logs of managed FortiSwitch units to the FortiGate unit or send FortiSwitch logs to a remote Syslog server.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Exporting logs to FortiGate on page 173](#)
- [Sending logs to a remote Syslog server on page 174](#)

## Exporting logs to FortiGate

You can enable and disable whether the managed FortiSwitch units export their logs to the FortiGate unit. The setting is global, and the default setting is enabled. Starting in FortiOS 5.6.3, more details are included in the exported FortiSwitch logs.

To allow a level of filtering, the FortiGate unit sets the user field to “fortiswitch-syslog” for each entry.

Use the following CLI command syntax:

```
config switch-controller switch-log
  set status {*enable | disable}
  set severity {emergency | alert | critical | error | warning | notification |
               *information | debug}
end
```

You can override the global log settings for a FortiSwitch unit, using the following commands:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <switch-id>
    config switch-log
      set local-override enable
```

At this point, you can configure the log settings that apply to this specific switch.

## Sending logs to a remote Syslog server

Instead of exporting FortiSwitch logs to a FortiGate unit, you can send FortiSwitch logs to one or two remote Syslog servers. After enabling this option, you can select the severity of log messages to send, whether to use comma-separated values (CSVs), and the type of remote Syslog facility. By default, FortiSwitch logs are sent to port 514 of the remote Syslog server.

Use the following CLI command syntax to configure the default syslogd and syslogd2 settings:

```
config switch-controller remote-log
  edit {syslogd | syslogd2}
    set status {enable | *disable}
    set server <IPv4_address_of_remote_syslog_server>
    set port <remote_syslog_server_listening_port>
    set severity {emergency | alert | critical | error | warning | notification |
      *information | debug}
    set csv {enable | *disable}
    set facility {kernel | user | mail | daemon | auth | syslog | lpr | news | uucp | cron
      | authpriv | ftp | ntp | audit | alert | clock | local0 | local1 | local2 |
      local3 | local4 | local5 | local6 | *local7}
  next
end
```

You can override the default syslogd and syslogd2 settings for a specific FortiSwitch unit, using the following commands:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config remote-log
      edit {edit syslogd | syslogd2}
        set status {enable | *disable}
        set server <IPv4_address_of_remote_syslog_server>
        set port <remote_syslog_server_listening_port>
        set severity {emergency | alert | critical | error | warning | notification |
          *information | debug}
        set csv {enable | *disable}
        set facility {kernel | user | mail | daemon | auth | syslog | lpr | news | uucp |
          cron | authpriv | ftp | ntp | audit | alert | clock | local0 | local1 |
          local2 | local3 | local4 | local5 | local6 | *local7}
      next
    end
  next
end
```

## Configuring FortiSwitch port mirroring

The FortiSwitch unit can send a copy of any ingress or egress packet on a port to egress on another port of the same FortiSwitch unit. The original traffic is unaffected. This process is known as port-based mirroring and is typically used for external analysis and capture.

Using remote SPAN (RSPAN) or encapsulated RSPAN (ERSPAN) allows you to send the collected packets across layer-2 domains for analysis. You can have multiple RSPAN sessions but only one ERSPAN session.

In RSPAN mode, traffic is encapsulated in VLAN 4092. The FortiSwitch unit assigns the uplink port and the dst port. The switching functionality is enabled on the dst interface when mirroring.

**NOTE:** RSPAN is supported on FSR-112D-POE, FSR-124D, and on platforms 2xx and higher.

In ERSPAN mode, traffic is encapsulated in Ethernet, IPv4, and generic routing encapsulation (GRE) headers. By focusing on traffic to and from specified ports and traffic to a specified MAC or IP address, ERSPAN reduces the amount of traffic being mirrored. The ERSPAN traffic is sent to a specified IP address, which must be reachable by IPv4 ICMP ping. If no IP address is specified, the traffic is not mirrored.

**NOTE:** ERSPAN is supported on FSR-124D and platforms 2xx and higher. ERSPAN cannot be used with the other FortiSwitch port-mirroring method.

### To configure FortiSwitch port-based mirroring:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config mirror
      edit <mirror_name>
        set status {active | inactive} // Required
        set dst <port_name> // Required
        set switching-packet {enable | disable}
        set src-ingress <port_name>
        set src-egress <port_name>
      next
    end
  next
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S524DF4K15000024
    config mirror
      edit 2
        set status active
        set dst port1
        set switching-packet enable
        set src-ingress port2 port3
        set src-egress port4 port5
      next
    end
  next
```

### To configure FortiSwitch RSPAN:

```
config switch-controller traffic-sniffer
  set mode rspan
  config target-mac
    edit <MM:MM:MM:SS:SS:SS> // mirror traffic sent FROM this source MAC address
      set description <string>
    end
  config target-ip
    edit <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx> // mirror traffic sent FROM this source IP address
      set description <string>
    end
  config target-port
    edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
      set description <string>
      set in-ports <portx porty portz ...> // mirror any traffic sent to these ports
      set out-ports <portx porty portz ...> // mirror any traffic sent from these ports
    end
```

```
end
```

**For example:**

```
config switch-controller traffic-sniffer
  set mode rspan
  config target-mac
    edit 00:00:00:aa:bb:cc
      set description MACtarget1
    end
  config target-ip
    edit 10.254.254.192
      set description IPtarget1
    end
  config target-port
    edit S524DF4K15000024
      set description PortTargets1
      set in-ports port5 port6 port7
      set out-ports port10
    end
  end
end
```

**To configure FortiSwitch ERSPAN:**

```
config switch-controller traffic-sniffer
  set mode erspan-auto
  set erspan-ip <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx> // IPv4 address where ERSPAN traffic is sent
  config target-mac
    edit <MM:MM:MM:SS:SS:SS> // mirror traffic sent to this MAC address
      set description <string>
    end
  config target-ip
    edit <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx> // mirror traffic sent to this IPv4 address
      set description <string>
    end
  config target-port
    edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
      set description <string>
      set in-ports <portx porty portz ...> // mirror traffic sent to these ports
      set out-ports <portx porty portz ...> // mirror traffic sent from these ports
    end
  end
end
```

**For example:**

```
config switch-controller traffic-sniffer
  set mode erspan-auto
  set erspan-ip 10.254.254.254
  config target-mac
    edit 00:00:00:aa:bb:cc
      set description MACtarget1
    end
  config target-ip
    edit 10.254.254.192
      set description IPtarget1
    end
  config target-port
    edit S524DF4K15000024
      set description PortTargets1
```



```
        set in-ports port5 port6 port7
        set out-ports port10
    end
end
```

**To disable FortiSwitch port mirroring:**

```
config switch-controller traffic-sniffer
    set mode none
end
```

## Configuring SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) enables you to monitor hardware on your network.

The managed FortiSwitch SNMP implementation is read-only. SNMP v1-compliant and v2c-compliant SNMP managers have read-only access to FortiSwitch system information through queries and can receive trap messages from the managed FortiSwitch unit.

To monitor FortiSwitch system information and receive FortiSwitch traps, you must first compile the Fortinet and FortiSwitch management information base (MIB) files. A MIB is a text file that describes a list of SNMP data objects that are used by the SNMP manager. These MIBs provide information that the SNMP manager needs to interpret the SNMP trap, event, and query messages sent by the FortiSwitch SNMP agent.

FortiSwitch core MIB files are available for download by going to *System > Config > SNMP > Settings* and selecting the *FortiSwitch MIB File* download link.

You configure SNMP on a global level so that all managed FortiSwitch units use the same settings. If you want one of the FortiSwitch units to use different settings from the global settings, configure SNMP locally.



The maximum number of hosts for SNMP traps on a FortiSwitch unit is 8.

---

This section covers the following topics:

- [Configuring SNMP globally on page 177](#)
- [Configuring SNMP locally on page 179](#)
- [SNMP OIDs on page 181](#)

## Configuring SNMP globally

**To configure SNMP globally:**

1. Configure a firewall policy on the FortiGate device managing the FortiSwitch unit to allow the SNMP server to use the FortiLink interface for SNMP polling.  
For SNMP traps on the managed FortiSwitch unit, you need to configure a firewall policy to allow the managed FortiSwitch unit to communicate with the SNMP server through the FortiLink interface.

2. Add SNMP access on the managed FortiSwitch unit.  
Add SNMP access to the `internal-allowaccess` setting. If you are using FortiLink mode over a layer-3 network with out-of-band management, add SNMP access to the `mgmt-allowaccess` setting.
3. Configure the SNMP system information.
4. Configure the SNMP community.
5. Configure the SNMP trap threshold values.
6. Configure the SNMP user.

**To configure a firewall policy for SNMP polling:**

```
config firewall policy
  edit <policy_ID>
    set name <policy_name>
    set srcintf <FortiGate port that communicates with the SNMP server>
    set dstintf <FortiLink port that communicates with the managed FortiSwitch unit>
    set action accept
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set schedule "always"
    set service {"SNMP" | <port_used_for_SNMP_polling>}
    set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
    set logtraffic all
  next
end
```

**To add SNMP access on the managed FortiSwitch unit:**

```
config switch-controller security-policy local-access
  edit "{default | <policy_name>}"
    set mgmt-allowaccess <options> snmp
    set internal-allowaccess <options> snmp
  next
end
```

**To configure the SNMP system information globally:**

```
config switch-controller snmp-sysinfo
  set status enable
  set engine-id <local_SNMP_engine_ID (the maximum is 24 characters)>
  set description <system_description>
  set contact-info <contact_information>
  set location <FortiGate_location>
end
```

**NOTE:** Each SNMP engine maintains a value, `snmpEngineID`, which uniquely identifies the SNMP engine. This value is included in each message sent to or from the SNMP engine. The `engine-id` is part of the `snmpEngineID` but does not include the Fortinet prefix `0x8000304404`.

**To configure the SNMP community globally:**

```
config switch-controller snmp-community
  edit <SNMP_community_entry_identifier>
    set name <SNMP_community_name>
    set status enable
    set query-v1-status enable
```

```
set query-v1-port <0-65535; the default is 161>
set query-v2c-status enable
set query-v2c-port <0-65535; the default is 161>
set trap-v1-status enable
set trap-v1-lport <0-65535; the default is 162>
set trap-v1-rport <0-65535; the default is 162>
set trap-v2c-status enable
set trap-v2c-lport <0-65535; the default is 162>
set trap-v2c-rport <0-65535; the default is 162>
set events {cpu-high mem-low log-full intf-ip ent-conf-change}
config hosts
    edit <host_entry_ID>
        set ip <IPv4_address_of_the_SNMP_manager>
    end
next
end
```

### To configure the SNMP trap threshold values globally:

```
config switch-controller snmp-trap-threshold
    set trap-high-cpu-threshold <percentage_value; the default is 80>
    set trap-low-memory-threshold <percentage_value; the default is 80>
    set trap-log-full-threshold <percentage_value; the default is 90>
end
```

### To configure the SNMP user globally:

```
config switch-controller snmp-user
    edit <SNMP_user_name>
        set queries enable
        set query-port <0-65535; the default is 161>
        set security-level {auth-priv | auth-no-priv | no-auth-no-priv}
        set auth-proto {md5 | sha1 | sha224 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}
        set auth-pwd <password_for_authentication_protocol>
        set priv-proto {aes128 | aes192 | aes192c | aes256 | aes256c | des}}
        set priv-pwd <password_for_encryption_protocol>
    end
```

## Configuring SNMP locally

### To configure SNMP for a specific FortiSwitch unit:

1. Configure the SNMP system information.
2. Configure the SNMP community.
3. Configure the SNMP trap threshold values.
4. Configure the SNMP user.

Starting in FortiSwitchOS 7.0.0, you can set up one or more SNMP v3 notifications (traps) in the CLI. The following notifications are supported:

- The CPU usage is too high.
- The configuration of an entity was changed.
- The IP address for an interface was changed.

- The available log space is low.
- The available memory is low.

By default, all SNMP notifications are enabled. Notifications are sent to one or more IP addresses.

### To configure the SNMP system information locally:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    set override-snmp-sysinfo enable
  config snmp-sysinfo
    set status enable
    set engine-id <local_SNMP_engine_ID (the maximum is 24 characters)>
    set description <system_description>
    set contact-info <contact_information>
    set location <FortiGate_location>
  end
next
end
```

**NOTE:** Each SNMP engine maintains a value, `snmpEngineID`, which uniquely identifies the SNMP engine. This value is included in each message sent to or from the SNMP engine. The engine-id is part of the `snmpEngineID` but does not include the Fortinet prefix `0x8000304404`.

### To configure the SNMP community locally:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    set override-snmp-community enable
  config snmp-community
    edit <SNMP_community_entry_identifier>
      set name <SNMP_community_name>
      set status enable
      set query-v1-status enable
      set query-v1-port <0-65535; the default is 161>
      set query-v2c-status enable
      set query-v2c-port <0-65535; the default is 161>
      set trap-v1-status enable
      set trap-v1-lport <0-65535; the default is 162>
      set trap-v1-rport <0-65535; the default is 162>
      set trap-v2c-status enable
      set trap-v2c-lport <0-65535; the default is 162>
      set trap-v2c-rport <0-65535; the default is 162>
      set events {cpu-high mem-low log-full intf-ip ent-conf-change}
    config hosts
      edit <host_entry_ID>
        set ip <IPv4_address_of_the_SNMP_manager>
      end
    next
  end
```

### To configure the SNMP trap threshold values locally:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    set override-snmp-trap-threshold enable
```

```

    config snmp-trap-threshold
        set trap-high-cpu-threshold <percentage_value; the default is 80>
        set trap-low-memory-threshold <percentage_value; the default is 80>
        set trap-log-full-threshold <percentage_value; the default is 90>
    end
next
end

```

### To configure the SNMP user locally:

```

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
        set override-snmp-user enable
        config snmp-user
            edit <SNMP_user_name>
                set queries enable
                set query-port <0-65535; the default is 161>
                set security-level {auth-priv | auth-no-priv | no-auth-no-priv}
                set auth-proto {md5 | sha1 | sha224 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}
                set auth-pwd <password_for_authentication_protocol>
                set priv-proto {aes128 | aes192 | aes192c | aes256 | aes256c | des}
                set priv-pwd <password_for_encryption_protocol>
            end
        next
    end
end

```

## SNMP OIDs

Three SNMP OIDs have been added to the FortiOS enterprise MIB 2 tables in FortiOS 7.0.1. They report the FortiSwitch port status and FortiSwitch CPU and memory statistics.

SNMP OID	Description
fgSwDeviceInfo.fgSwDeviceTable.fgSwDeviceEntry.fgSwDeviceEntry.fgSwCpu 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.24.1.1.1.11	Percentage of the CPU being used.
fgSwDeviceInfo.fgSwDeviceTable.fgSwDeviceEntry.fgSwDeviceEntry.fgSwMemory 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.24.1.1.1.12	Percentage of memory being used.
fgSwPortInfo.fgSwPortTable.fgSwPortEntry.fgSwPortStatus 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.24.2.1.1.6	Whether a managed FortiSwitch port is up or down.

These OIDs require FortiSwitchOS 7.0.0 or higher. FortiLink and SNMP must be configured on the FortiGate device.

FortiSwitch units update the CPU and memory statistics every 30 seconds. This interval cannot be changed.

FortiOS versions 6.4.2 through 7.0.0 show the port status in the configuration management database (CMDB) for managed ports; FortiOS 7.0.1 and higher show the link status that has been retrieved from the switch port as the port status for managed ports.

## Sample queries

**To find out how much CPU is being used on a FortiSwitch 1024D with the serial number FS1D243Z17000032:**

```
root@PC05:~# snmpwalk -v2c -Cc -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1
1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.24.1.1.1.11.2.8.17000032
```

**To find out how much memory is being used on a FortiSwitch 1024D with the serial number FS1D243Z17000032:**

```
root@PC05:~# snmpwalk -v2c -Cc -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1
1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.24.1.1.1.12.2.8.17000032
```

**To find out the status of port1 of a FortiSwitch 1024D with the serial number FS1D243Z17000032:**

```
root@PC05:~# snmpwalk -v2c -Cc -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1
1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.24.2.1.1.6.2.8.17000032.1
```

## Configuring sFlow

sFlow is a method of monitoring the traffic on your network to identify areas on the network that might impact performance and throughput. With sFlow, you can export truncated packets and interface counters. FortiSwitch implements sFlow version 5 and supports trunks and VLANs.

**NOTE:** Because sFlow is CPU intensive, Fortinet does not recommend high rates of sampling for long periods.

sFlow uses packet sampling to monitor network traffic. The sFlow agent captures packet information at defined intervals and sends them to an sFlow collector for analysis, providing real-time data analysis. To minimize the impact on network throughput, the information sent is only a sampling of the data.

The sFlow collector is a central server running software that analyzes and reports on network traffic. The sampled packets and counter information, referred to as flow samples and counter samples, respectively, are sent as sFlow datagrams to a collector. Upon receiving the datagrams, the sFlow collector provides real-time analysis and graphing to indicate the source of potential traffic issues. sFlow collector software is available from a number of third-party software vendors. You must configure a FortiGate policy to transmit the samples from the FortiSwitch unit to the sFlow collector.

sFlow can monitor network traffic in two ways:

- Flow samples—You specify the percentage of packets (one out of  $n$  packets) to randomly sample.
- Counter samples—You specify how often (in seconds) the network device sends interface counters.

Use the following CLI commands to specify the IP address and port for the sFlow collector. By default, the IP address is 0.0.0.0, and the port number is 6343.

```
config switch-controller sflow
  collector-ip <x.x.x.x>
  collector-port <port_number>
end
```

Use the following CLI commands to configure sFlow:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
```

```
        edit <port_name>
            set sflow-sampler {disabled | enabled}
            set sflow-sample-rate <0-99999>
            set sflow-counter-interval <1-255>
        next
    next
end
```

**For example:**

```
config switch-controller sflow
    collector-ip 1.2.3.4
    collector-port 10
end

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S524DF4K15000024
        config ports
            edit port5
                set sflow-sampler enabled
                set sflow-sample-rate 10
                set sflow-counter-interval 60
            next
        next
    end
```

## Configuring flow tracking and export

You can sample IP packets on managed FortiSwitch units and then export the data in NetFlow format or Internet Protocol Flow Information Export (IPFIX) format. You can choose to sample on a single ingress or egress port, on all FortiSwitch units, or on all FortiSwitch ingress ports.

When a new FortiSwitch unit or trunk port is added, the flow-tracking configuration is updated automatically based on the specified sampling mode. When a FortiSwitch port becomes part of an ISL or ICL or is removed, the flow-tracking configuration is updated automatically based on the specified sampling mode.

The maximum number of concurrent flows is defined by the FortiSwitch model. When this limit is exceeded, the oldest flow expires and is exported.

### To configure flow tracking on managed FortiSwitch units:

```
config switch-controller flow-tracking
    set sample-mode {local | perimeter | device-ingress}
    set sample-rate <0-99999>
    set format {netflow1 | netflow5 | netflow9 | ipfix}
    set collector-ip <collector IP address>
    set collector-port <0-65535; default is 0>
    set transport {udp | tcp | sctp}
    set level {vlan | ip | port | proto}
    set filter <string>
    set max-export-pkt-size <512-9216 bytes; default is 512>.
    set timeout-general <60-604800 seconds; default is 3600>
    set timeout-icmp <60-604800 seconds; default is 300>.
    set timeout-max <60-604800 seconds; default is 604800>
```

```
set timeout-tcp <60-604800 seconds; default is 3600>
set timeout-tcp-fin <60-604800 seconds; default is 300>
set timeout-tcp-rst <60-604800 seconds; default is 120>
set timeout-udp <60-604800 seconds; default is 300>
end
```

### Configure the sampling mode

You can set the sampling mode to local, perimeter, or device-ingress.

- The local mode samples packets on a specific FortiSwitch port.
- The perimeter mode samples packets on all FortiSwitch ports that receive data traffic, except for ISL and ICL ports. For perimeter mode, you can also configure the sampling rate.
- The device-ingress mode samples packets on all FortiSwitch ports that receive data traffic for hop-by-hop tracking. For device-ingress mode, you can also configure the sampling rate.

### Configure the sampling rate

For perimeter or device-ingress sampling, you can set the sampling rate, which samples 1 out of the specified number of packets. The default sampling rate is 1 out of 512 packets.

### Configure the flow-tracking protocol

You can set the format of exported flow data as NetFlow version 1, NetFlow version 5, NetFlow version 9, or IPFIX sampling.

### Configure collector IP address

The default is 0.0.0.0. Setting the value to "0.0.0.0" or "" disables this feature. The format is xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.

### Configure the transport protocol

You can set exported packets to use UDP, TCP, or SCTP for transport.

### Configure the flow-tracking level

You can set the flow-tracking level to one of the following:

- `vlan`—The FortiSwitch unit collects source IP address, destination IP address, source port, destination port, protocol, Type of Service, and VLAN from the sample packet.
- `ip`—The FortiSwitch unit collects source IP address and destination IP address from the sample packet.
- `port`—The FortiSwitch unit collects source IP address, destination IP address, source port, destination port, and protocol from the sample packet.
- `proto`—The FortiSwitch unit collects source IP address, destination IP address, and protocol from the sample packet.

### Configure the filter

Use the Berkeley Packet Filter to specify what packets to sample.

### Configure the maximum exported packet size

You can set the maximum size of exported packets in the application level.

### To remove flow reports from a managed FortiSwitch unit:

```
execute switch-controller switch-action flow-tracking {delete-flows-all | expire-flows-all}
    <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

Expired flows are exported.



**To view flow statistics for a managed FortiSwitch unit:**

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info flow-tracking statistics <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

**To view raw flow records for a managed FortiSwitch unit:**

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info flow-tracking flows-raw <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

**To view flow record data for a managed FortiSwitch unit:**

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info flow-tracking flows {number_of_records | all} {IP_
  address | all} <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <FortiSwitch_port_name>
```

For example:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info flow-tracking flows 100 all S524DF4K15000024 port6
```

## Configuring flow control and ingress pause metering

Flow control allows you to configure a port to send or receive a “pause frame” (that is, a special packet that signals a source to stop sending flows for a specific time interval because the buffer is full). By default, flow control is disabled on all ports.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set flow-control {both | rx | tx | disable}
      next
    end
  end
```

Parameters enable flow control to do the following:

- **rx**—receive pause control frames
- **tx**—transmit pause control frames
- **both**—transmit and receive pause control frames

If you enable flow control to transmit pause control frames or to transmit and receive pause control frames, you can also use ingress pause metering to limit the input bandwidth of an ingress port. Because ingress pause metering stops the traffic temporarily instead of dropping it, ingress pause metering can provide better performance than policing when the port is connected to a server or end station. To use ingress pause metering, you need to set the ingress metering rate in kilobits and set the percentage of the threshold for resuming traffic on the ingress port.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port_name>
        set flow-control {tx | both}
        set pause-meter <128-2147483647; set to 0 to disable>
        set pause-meter-resume {25% | 50% | 75%}
      next
    end
  end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit S424ENTF19000007
    config ports
      edit port29
        set flow-control tx
        set pause-meter 900
        set pause-meter-resume 50%
      next
    end
  end
end
```

# Operation and maintenance

This section covers the following topics:

- [Discovering, authorizing, and deauthorizing FortiSwitch units on page 187](#)
- [Managed FortiSwitch display on page 189](#)
- [Diagnostics and tools on page 193](#)
- [FortiSwitch ports display on page 196](#)
- [FortiSwitch per-port device visibility on page 196](#)
- [Managing DSL transceivers \(FN-TRAN-DSL\) on page 197](#)
- [Displaying, resetting, and restoring port statistics on page 199](#)
- [Network interface display on page 200](#)
- [Data statistics on page 200](#)
- [Synchronizing the FortiGate unit with the managed FortiSwitch units on page 202](#)
- [Viewing and upgrading the FortiSwitch firmware version on page 202](#)
- [Canceling pending or downloading FortiSwitch upgrades on page 203](#)
- [Registering FortiSwitch to FortiCloud on page 203](#)
- [Replacing a managed FortiSwitch unit on page 206](#)
- [Executing custom FortiSwitch scripts on page 212](#)
- [Resetting PoE-enabled ports on page 213](#)

## Discovering, authorizing, and deauthorizing FortiSwitch units

This section covers the following topics:

- [Editing a managed FortiSwitch unit on page 187](#)
- [Adding preauthorized FortiSwitch units on page 188](#)
- [Authorizing the FortiSwitch unit on page 188](#)
- [Deauthorizing FortiSwitch units on page 188](#)
- [Converting to FortiSwitch standalone mode on page 189](#)

## Editing a managed FortiSwitch unit

**To edit a managed FortiSwitch unit:**

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click on the FortiSwitch unit and then click *Edit* or right-click on a FortiSwitch unit and select *Edit*.

From the *Edit Managed FortiSwitch* form, you can:

- Change the *Name* and *Description* of the FortiSwitch unit.
- View the *Status* of the FortiSwitch unit.
- *Restart* the FortiSwitch.
- *Authorize* or deauthorize the FortiSwitch unit.

- *Update* the firmware running on the switch.
- Override 802.1x settings, including the reauthentication interval, maximum reauthentication attempts, and link-down action.

## Adding preauthorized FortiSwitch units

After you preauthorize a FortiSwitch unit, you can assign the FortiSwitch ports to a VLAN.

### To preauthorize a FortiSwitch:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the New Managed FortiSwitch page, enter the serial number, model name, and description of the FortiSwitch.
4. Move the *Authorized* slider to the right.
5. Select *OK*. The Managed FortiSwitch page lists the preauthorized switch.

## Authorizing the FortiSwitch unit

If you configured the FortiLink interface to manually authorize the FortiSwitch unit as a managed switch, perform the following steps:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Optionally, click on the FortiSwitch faceplate and click *Authorize*. This step is required only if you disabled the automatic authorization field of the interface.

## Deauthorizing FortiSwitch units

A device can be deauthorized to remove it from the Security Fabric.

### To deauthorize a device:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric > Fabric Connectors*
2. In the topology tree, click the device and select *Deauthorize*.

After devices are deauthorized, the devices' serial numbers are saved in a trusted list that can be viewed in the CLI using the `show system csf` command. For example, this result shows a deauthorized FortiSwitch:

```
show system csf
  config system csf
    set status enable
    set group-name "Office-Security-Fabric"
    set group-password ENC 1Z2X345V678
    config trusted-list
      edit "FGT6HD391806070"
      next
      edit "S248DF3X17000482"
        set action deny
      next
    end
  end
end
```

## Converting to FortiSwitch standalone mode

Use one of the following commands to convert a FortiSwitch from FortiLink mode to standalone mode so that it will no longer be managed by a FortiGate:

- `execute switch-controller factory-reset <switch-id>`—This command returns the FortiSwitch to the factory defaults and then reboots the FortiSwitch. If the FortiSwitch is configured for FortiLink auto-discovery, FortiGate can detect and automatically authorize the FortiSwitch. For example:`execute switch-controller factory-reset S1234567890`
- `execute switch-controller switch-action set-standalone <switch-id>`—This command returns the FortiSwitch to the factory defaults, reboots the FortiSwitch, and prevents the FortiGate from automatically detecting and authorizing the FortiSwitch. For example:`execute switch-controller set-standalone S1234567890`

You can disable FortiLink auto-discovery on multiple FortiSwitch units using the following commands:

```
config switch-controller global
  set disable-discovery <switch-id>
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller global
  set disable-discovery S1234567890
end
```

You can also add or remove entries from the list of FortiSwitch units that have FortiLink auto-discovery disabled using the following commands:

```
config switch-controller global
  append disable-discovery <switch-id>
  unselect disable-discovery <switch-id>
end
```

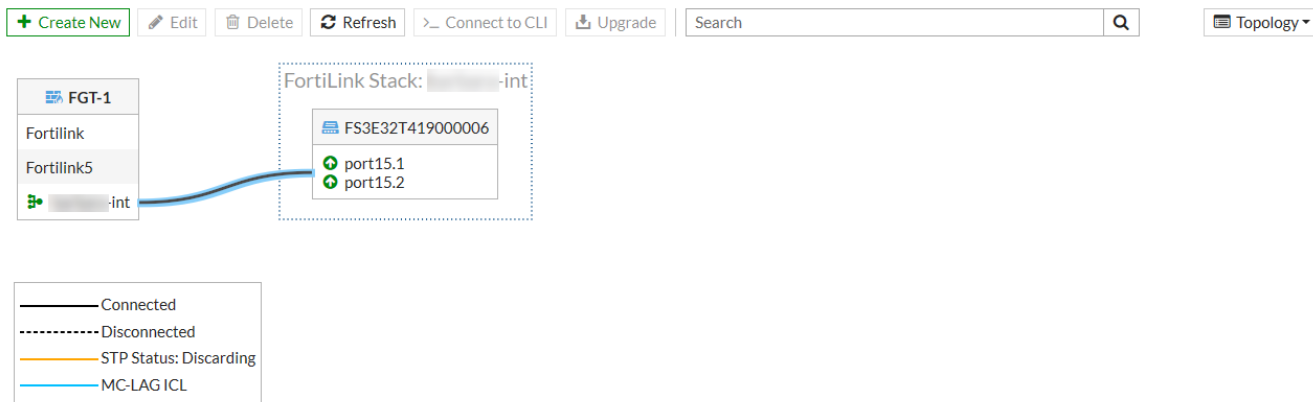
For example:

```
config switch-controller global
  append disable-discovery S012345678
  unselect disable-discovery S1234567890
end
```

## Managed FortiSwitch display

Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch* to see all of the switches being managed by your FortiGate. Select *Topology* from the drop-down menu in the upper right corner to see which devices are connected.

When the FortiLink is established successfully, the status is green (next to the FortiGate interface name and on the FortiSwitch faceplate), and the link between the ports is a solid line.



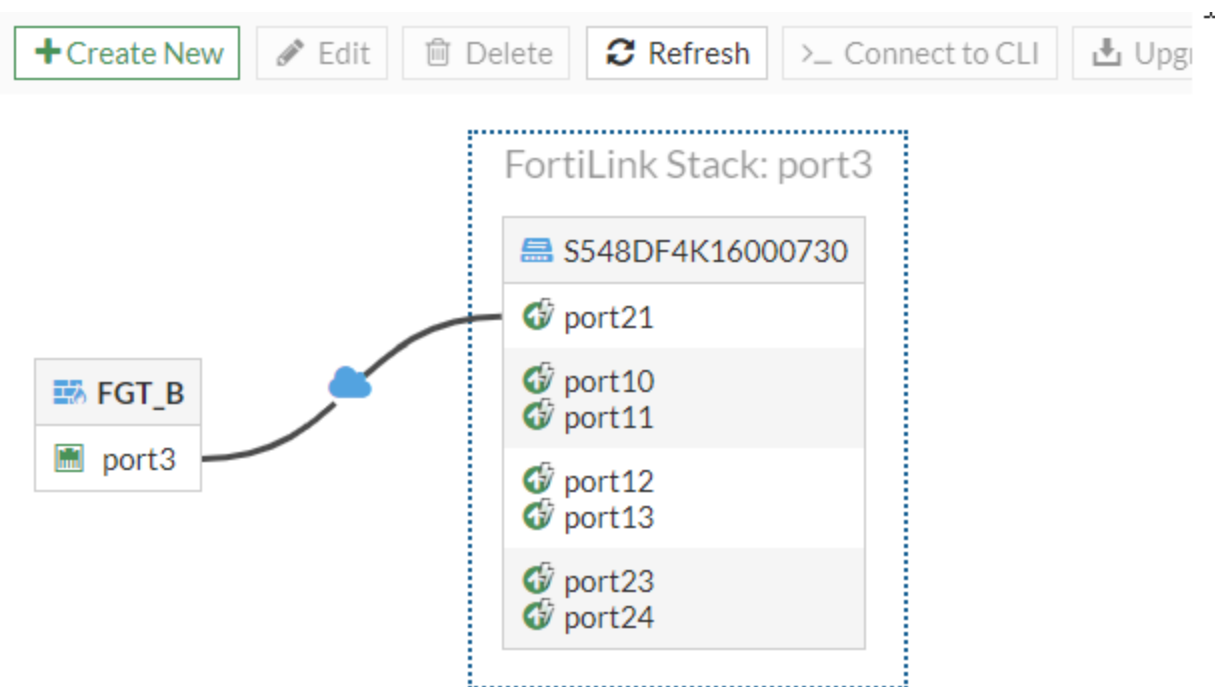
If the link has gone down for some reason, the line will be dashed, and a broken link icon will appear. You can still edit the FortiSwitch unit though and find more information about the status of the switch. The link to the FortiSwitch unit might be down for a number of reasons; for example, a problem with the cable linking the two devices, firmware versions being out of synch, and so on. You need to make sure the firmware running on the FortiSwitch unit is compatible with the firmware running on the FortiGate unit.

From the Managed FortiSwitch page, you can edit any of the managed FortiSwitch units, remove a FortiSwitch unit from the configuration, refresh the display, connect to the CLI of a FortiSwitch unit, or deauthorize a FortiSwitch unit.

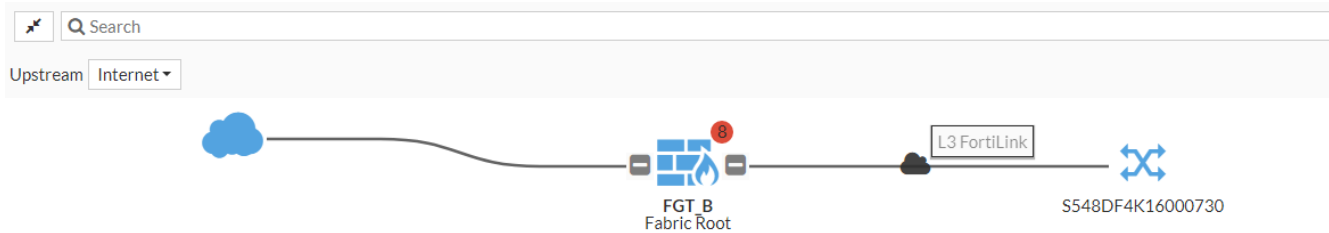
## Cloud icon indicates that the FortiSwitch unit is managed over layer 3

A new cloud icon indicates when the FortiSwitch unit is being managed over layer 3. The cloud icon is displayed in two places in the GUI.

Go to *WiFi Controller > Managed FortiSwitch* and select *Topology*. In the following figure, the cloud icon over the connection line indicates that S548DF4K16000730 is being managed over layer 3.



Go to *Security Fabric > Physical Topology*. In the following figure, the cloud icon over the connection line indicates that S548DF4K16000730 is being managed over layer 3.

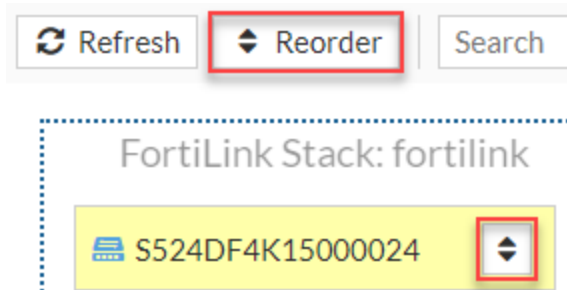


## Re-ordering FortiSwitch units in the Topology view

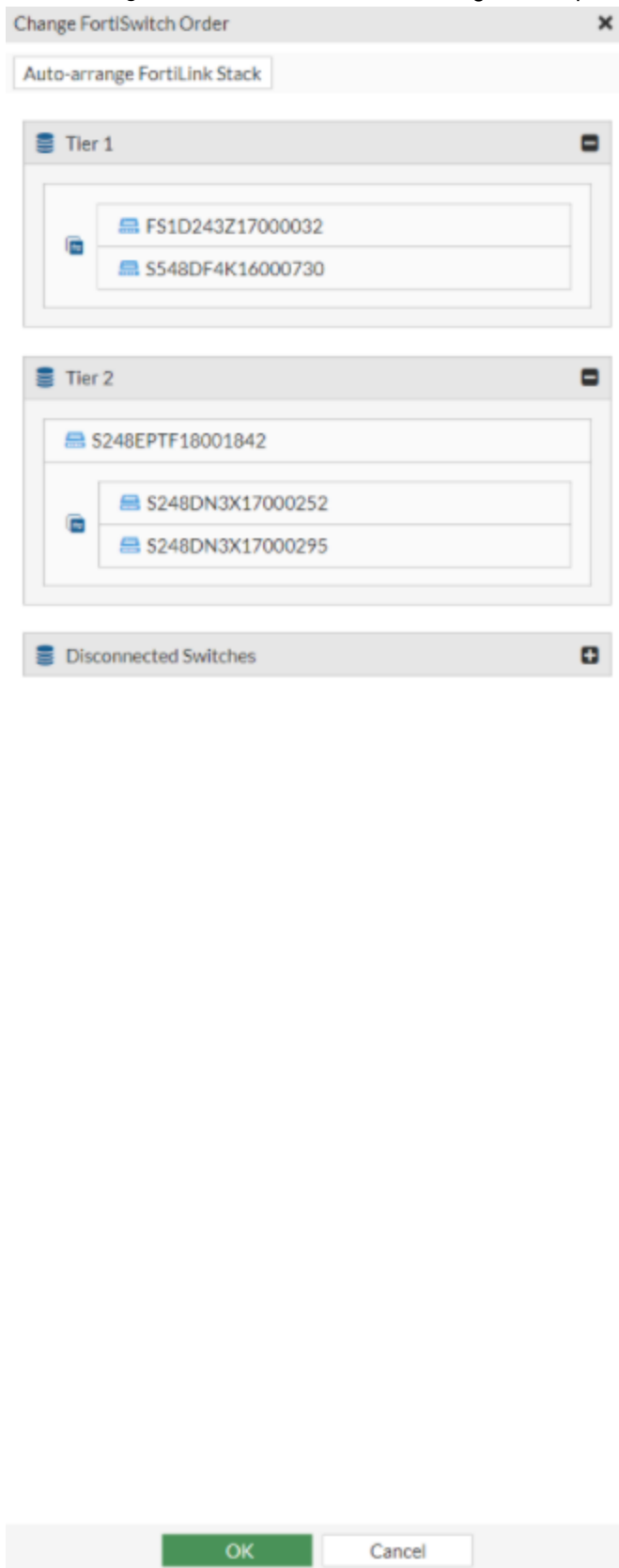
Starting in FortiOS 7.0.1, you can change the order in which FortiSwitch units are displayed in the Topology view.

### To rearrange the FortiSwitch units in the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitches*.
2. In the *View* dropdown list, select *Topology*.
3. Click *Reorder* or the double-arrow button next to the FortiSwitch serial number.

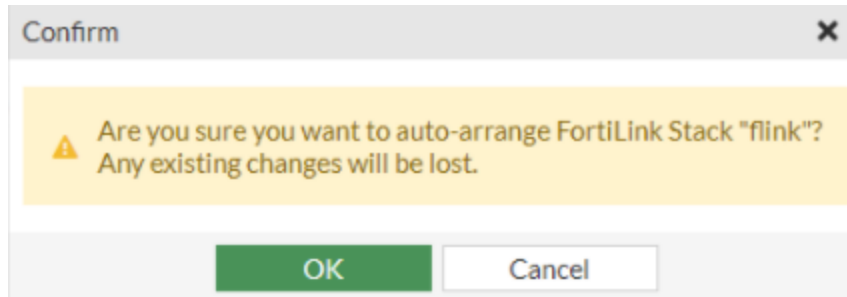


4. In the *Change FortiSwitch Order* window, drag-and-drop each FortiSwitch unit to change the order.





5. If you want FortiOS to determine the arrangement with the fewest edge crossings, click *Auto-arrange FortiLink Stack* in the *Change FortiSwitch Order* window and then click *OK* in the *Confirm* window.



**To rearrange the FortiSwitch units in the FortiOS CLI:**

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    move <FortiSwitch_serial_number1> before <FortiSwitch_serial_number2>
  next
end
```

FortiSwitch\_serial\_number1 is now listed above FortiSwitch\_serial\_number2.

## Diagnostics and tools

The *Diagnostics and Tools* form reports the general health of the FortiSwitch unit, displays details about the FortiSwitch unit, and allows you to run diagnostic tests.

Diagnostics and Tools - FSW-424E

FSW-424E

Name

FSW-424E

Serial Number

S424ENTF19000007

Model

S424EN

FortiLink Interface

barbara-int

Status

Offline

Registration

Not Registered

Actions

Edit

General

CPU Usage

Memory Usage

Connection Uptime

Temperature

Faceplate

MGMT

1 3 5 7 9 11 13 15 17 19 21 23 25 26 27 28

2 4 6 8 10 12 14 16 18 20 22 24

Ports

Cable Test

Logs

CLI Access

Search

Q

Port

Trunk

Port	Trunk	Access Mode	Enabled Features	Native VLAN	Allowed VLANs	PoE	Device Information	DI
port1		NAC	<div>Edge Port</div> <div>Spanning Tree Protocol</div>	onboarding.98	quarantine.98			
port2		NAC	<div>Edge Port</div> <div>Spanning Tree Protocol</div>	onboarding.98	quarantine.98			
port3		NAC	<div>Edge Port</div> <div>Spanning Tree Protocol</div>	onboarding.98	quarantine.98			
port4		NAC	<div>Edge Port</div> <div>Spanning Tree Protocol</div>	onboarding.98	quarantine.98			
port5		NAC	<div>Edge Port</div> <div>Spanning Tree Protocol</div>	onboarding.98	quarantine.98			
port6		NAC	<div>Edge Port</div> <div>Spanning Tree Protocol</div>	onboarding.98	quarantine.98			
port7		NAC	<div>Edge Port</div> <div>Spanning Tree Protocol</div>	onboarding.98	quarantine.98			
port8		NAC	<div>Edge Port</div>	onboarding.98	quarantine.98			

Close

**To view the Diagnostics and Tools form:**

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click on the FortiSwitch unit and then click *Diagnostics and Tools*.

From the *Diagnostics and Tools* form, you can do the following:

- *Authorize* or *deauthorize* the FortiSwitch.
- *Upgrade* the firmware running on the switch.
- *Restart* the FortiSwitch unit.
- *Connect to CLI* to run CLI commands.
- *Show in List* to return to the *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch* page.
- Go to the *Edit Managed FortiSwitch* form.
- Start or stop the *LED Blink* to identify a specific FortiSwitch unit. See [Making the LEDs blink on page 195](#).
- Display a list of FortiSwitch ports and trunks and configuration details.

- Run a *Cable Test* on a selected port. See [Runnng the cable test on page 195](#).
- View the *Logs* for the FortiSwitch unit.

You can also access the *Diagnostics and Tools* form from the *Security Fabric > Physical Topology* page.

## Making the LEDs blink

When you have multiple FortiSwitch units and need to locate a specific switch, you can flash all port LEDs on and off for a specified number of minutes.

### To identify a specific FortiSwitch unit:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click on the FortiSwitch unit and then click *Diagnostics and Tools*.
3. Select *LED Blink > Start* and then select *5 minutes*, *15 minutes*, *30 minutes*, or *60 minutes*.
4. After you locate the FortiSwitch unit, select *LED Blink > Stop*.

**NOTE:** For the 5xx switches, LED Blink flashes only the SFP port LEDs, instead of all the port LEDs.

## Runnng the cable test

**NOTE:** Running cable diagnostics on a port that has the link up interrupts the traffic for several seconds.

You can check the state of cables connected to a specific port. The following pair states are supported:

- Open
- Short
- Ok
- Open\_Short
- Unknown
- Crosstalk

If no cable is connected to the specific port, the state is Open, and the cable length is 0 meters.

### Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click on the FortiSwitch unit and then click *Diagnostics and Tools*.
3. Select *Cable Test*.
4. Select a port.
5. Select *Diagnose*.

**NOTE:** There are some limitations for cable diagnostics on the FS-108E, FS-124E, FS-108E-POE, FS-108E-FPOE, FS-124E-POE, FS-124E-FPOE, FS-148E, and FS-148E-POE models:

- Crosstalk cannot be detected.
- There is a 5-second delay before results are displayed.
- The value for the cable length is inaccurate.
- The results are inaccurate for open and short cables.

## FortiSwitch ports display

The *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports* page displays port information about each of the managed switches.

The following figure shows the display for a FortiSwitch 248E-FPOE:

+ Create New		Edit	Delete	Search		Q					Port	Trunk	Faceplates
Port	Trunk	Access Mode	Enabled Features	Native VLAN	Allowed VLANs	PoE	Device Information	DHCP Snooping	Transceiver				
S248EP3X17000054 - FSW-248E-POE 52													
port1		Normal	<div><div>✓</div> Edge Port</div> <div><div>✓</div> Spanning Tree Protocol</div>	vsw.roger		⚡ Powered		🛑 Untrusted					
port2		Normal	<div><div>✓</div> Edge Port</div> <div><div>✓</div> Spanning Tree Protocol</div>	vsw.roger		⚡ Powered		🛑 Untrusted					
port3		Normal	<div><div>✓</div> Edge Port</div> <div><div>✓</div> Spanning Tree Protocol</div>	vsw.roger		⚡ Powered		🛑 Untrusted					

Select *Faceplates* to get the following information:

- active ports (green)
- PoE-enabled ports (blue rectangle)
- FortiLink port (link icon)

If you device has PoE, the Faceplates page displays the total power budget and the actual power currently allocated.

The allocated power displays a blue bar for the used power (currently being consumed) and a green bar for the reserved power (power available for additional devices on the POE ports).

Each entry in the port list displays the following information:

- Port status (red for down, green for up)
- Port name
- If the port is a member of a trunk
- Access mode
- Enabled features
- Native VLAN
- Allowed VLANs
- PoE status
- Device information
- DHCP snooping status
- Transceiver information

## FortiSwitch per-port device visibility

In the FortiGate GUI, *User & Device > Device List* displays a list of devices attached to the FortiSwitch ports. For each device, the table displays the IP address of the device and the interface (FortiSwitch name and port).

From the CLI, the following command displays information about the host devices:

```
diagnose switch-controller mac-cache show <switch-id>
```

## Managing DSL transceivers (FN-TRAN-DSL)

A Procend 180-T DSL transceiver (FN-TRAN-DSL) that is plugged in to a FortiGate-managed FortiSwitch port can now be managed by a FortiGate unit. The management of the DSL transceiver and the FortiSwitch port includes the ability to program the physical-layer attributes on the DSL module, retrieve the status and statistics from the module, upgrade the module's firmware, and reset the module.

You can use the following FortiGate models to manage FN-TRAN-DSL: FG-80F, FG-81F, FG-80F-BP, FGR-60F, FGR-60F-3G4G, FG-60F, and FG-40F-3G4G. The FortiSwitch unit must be running FortiSwitchOS 7.0.1, build 0038 or later. A FortiSwitch unit running in standalone mode cannot program the physical-layer attributes on the DSL module.

### To create a DSL policy:

```
config switch-controller dsl policy
  edit <DSL_policy_name>
    set type Procend
    set us-bitswap {enable | disable}
    set ds-bitswap {enable | disable}
    set profile {auto-30a | auto-17a | auto-12ab}
    set cs {A43, B43, A43C, V43}
    set pause-frame {enable | disable}
    set cpe_aele {enable | disable}
    set cpe_aele-mode {ELE_M0 | ELE_DS | ELE_PB | ELE_MIN}
    set append-padding {enable | disable}
  next
end
```

Option	Description	Default value
<DSL_policy_name>	Enter a name for the DSL policy.	No default
type Procend	You can only select the <code>Procend</code> type.	Procend
us-bitswap {enable   disable}	Enable or disable whether the upstream bits are exchanged.	enable
ds-bitswap {enable   disable}	Enable or disable whether the downstream bits are exchanged.	enable
profile {auto-30a   auto-17a   auto-12ab}	Select which very-high-bit-rate digital subscriber line (VDSL) customer premises equipment (CPE) profile to use.	auto-30a
cs {A43, B43, A43C, V43}	Select which CPE carrier set to use.	A43 B43 A43C
pause-frame {enable   disable}	Enable or disable device pause frames.	enable
cpe_aele {enable   disable}	Enable or disable CPE alternative electrical length estimation (AELE) mode.	enable
cpe_aele-mode {ELE_M0   ELE_DS   ELE_PB   ELE_MIN}	Select the CPE AELE mode to use.	ELE_MIN

Option	Description	Default value
append_padding {enable   disable}	Enable or disable whether to append padding.	enable

### To specify the DSL policy to use:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
    config ports
      edit <port>
        set dsl-profile <DSL_policy_name>
      next
    end
  next
end
```

### To display DSL statistics:

```
get switch-controller dsl link-time <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
get switch-controller dsl pkt-count <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
get switch-controller dsl pm-line-curr <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
get switch-controller dsl policy
get switch-controller dsl rate <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
get switch-controller dsl status <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
get switch-controller dsl summary <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
get switch-controller dsl version <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
```

Option	Description
link-time <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>	Display the link time for the DSL module plugged in to the specified FortiSwitch port.
pkt-count <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>	Display the packet count for the DSL module plugged in to the specified FortiSwitch port.
pm-line-curr <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>	Display the line current for the DSL module plugged in to the specified FortiSwitch port.
policy	List the available DSL policies and their settings.
rate <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>	Display the rate for the DSL module plugged in to the specified FortiSwitch port.
status <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>	Display the status of the DSL module plugged in to the specified FortiSwitch port.
summary <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>	Display a summary for the DSL module plugged in to the specified FortiSwitch port.
version <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>	Display the version of the DSL module plugged in to the specified FortiSwitch port.

### To reset the DSL module on a FortiSwitch port:

```
execute switch-controller dsl reset <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
```

**To upload a FortiSwitch image to the FortiGate local storage:**

```
execute switch-controller dsl update ftp <DSL_image_name_on_FTP_server> <FTP_server>[:<FTP_
port>] <FTP_user_name> <FTP_password> <FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
execute switch-controller dsl update tftp <DSL_image_name_on_TFTP_server> <TFTP_server>
<FortiSwitch_serial_number> <port_name>
```

## Displaying, resetting, and restoring port statistics

For the following commands, if the managed FortiSwitch unit is not specified, the command is applied to all ports of all managed FortiSwitch units.

**To display port statistics of a managed FortiSwitch unit:**

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info port-stats <managed FortiSwitch device ID> <port_
name>
```

For example:

```
FG100D3G15817028 (global) # diagnose switch-controller switch-info port-stats
S524DF4K15000024 port8
Vdom: dmgmt-vdom
Vdom: roort
Vdom: root
```

```
S524DF4K15000024:
Port(port8) is Admin up, line protocol is down
Interface Type is Serial Gigabit Media Independent Interface(SGMII/SerDes)
Address is 08:5B:0E:F1:95:ED, loopback is not set
MTU 9216 bytes, Encapsulation IEEE 802.3/Ethernet-II
half-duplex, 0 Mb/s, link type is auto
input : 0 bytes, 0 packets, 0 errors, 0 drops, 0 oversizes
0 unicasts, 0 multicasts, 0 broadcasts, 0 unknowns
output : 0 bytes, 0 packets, 0 errors, 0 drops, 0 oversizes
0 unicasts, 0 multicasts, 0 broadcasts
0 fragments, 0 undersizes, 0 collisions, 0 jabbers
```

```
Vdom: vdom-1
```

**To reset the port statistics counters of a managed FortiSwitch unit:**

For example:

```
FG100D3G15817028 (global) # diagnose switch-controller trigger reset-hardware-counters
S524DF4K15000024 1,3,port6-7
```

**NOTE:** This command is provided for debugging; accuracy is not guaranteed when the counters are reset. Resetting the counters might have a negative effect on monitoring tools, such as SNMP and FortiGate. The statistics gathered during the time when the counters are reset might be discarded.

**To restore the port statistics counters of a managed FortiSwitch unit:**

```
diagnose switch-controller trigger restore-hardware-counters <managed FortiSwitch device ID>
<port_name>
```

For example:

```
FG100D3G15817028 (global) # diagnose switch-controller trigger restore-hardware-counters
S524DF4K15000024 port10-port11,internal
```

Network interface display

On the *Network > Interfaces* page, you can see the FortiGate interface connected to the FortiSwitch unit. The GUI indicates *Dedicated to FortiSwitch* in the IP/Netmask field.

FortiGate 3200D

MGMT1

1 3 5 7 9 11 13 15 17 19 21 23 25 27 29 31 33 35 37 39 41 43 45 47

MGMT2

2 4 6 8 10 12 14 16 18 20 22 24 26 28 30 32 34 36 38 40 42 44 46 48

Create New

Edit

Delete

Search

Q

Group By Type

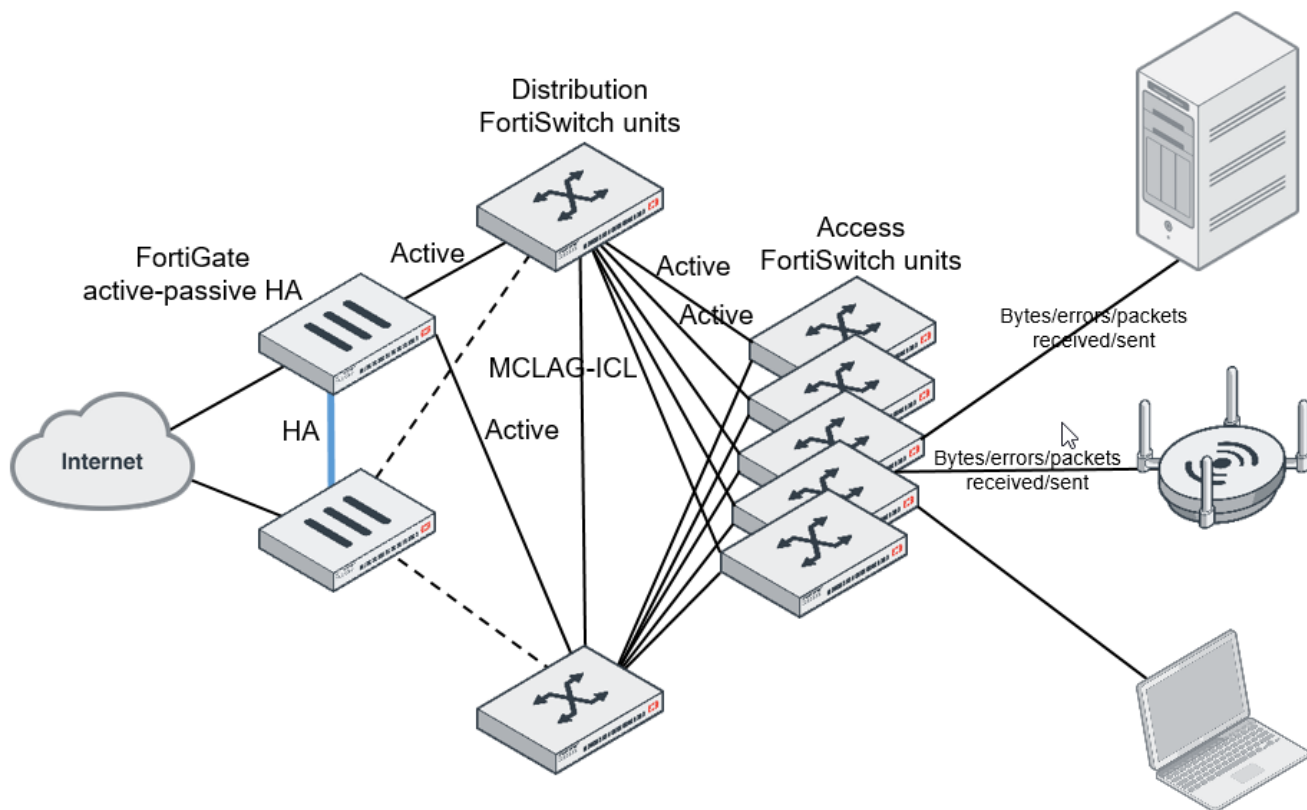
Name	Type	Members	IP/Netmask	Transceiver(s)	Administrative Access	DHCP Clients	DHCP Ranges	Virtual Domain	Ref.
int	802.3ad Aggregate	port39 port40	Dedicated to FortiSwitch	FINISAR CORP.FTLX8574D3BCL FINISAR CORP.FTLX8574D3BCL	PING Security Fabric Connection	1			9
default.98	VLAN		0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0						44
onboarding.98	VLAN								2
quarantine.98	VLAN								89
rspan.98	VLAN					1			1
video.98	VLAN								1
voice.98	VLAN								3

Data statistics

This example shows a FortiLink scenario where the FortiGate acts as the switch controller that collects the data statistics of managed FortiSwitch ports. This is counted by each FortiSwitch and concentrated in the controller.



## Sample topology



### To show data statistics using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports*.
2. Select *Configure Table*.
3. Select *Bytes, Errors and Packets* to make them visible.

The related data statistic of each managed FortiSwitch port is shown.

### To show data statistics using the CLI:

```
# diagnose switch-controller switch-info port-stats S248EPTF180XXXX
.....

Port(port50) is Admin up, line protocol is down
Interface Type is Gigabit Media Independent Interface(GMII)
Address is 70:4C:A5:E0:F3:8D, loopback is not set
MTU 9216 bytes, Encapsulation IEEE 802.3/Ethernet-II
full-duplex, 1000 Mb/s, link type is manual
input  : 0 bytes, 0 packets, 0 errors, 0 drops, 0 oversizes
         0 unicasts, 0 multicasts, 0 broadcasts, 0 unknowns
output : 0 bytes, 0 packets, 0 errors, 0 drops, 0 oversizes
         0 unicasts, 0 multicasts, 0 broadcasts
0 fragments, 0 undersizes, 0 collisions, 0 jabbers
.....
```

## Synchronizing the FortiGate unit with the managed FortiSwitch units

You can synchronize the FortiGate unit with the managed FortiSwitch units to check for synchronization errors on each managed FortiSwitch unit.

Use the following command to synchronize the full configuration of a FortiGate unit with a managed FortiSwitch unit:

```
diagnose switch-controller trigger config-sync <FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

## Viewing and upgrading the FortiSwitch firmware version

You can view the current firmware version of a FortiSwitch unit and upgrade the FortiSwitch unit to a new firmware version. The FortiGate unit will suggest an upgrade when a new version is available in FortiGuard.

### Using the FortiGate GUI

**To view the FortiSwitch firmware version:**

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. In the main panel, select the FortiSwitch faceplate and click **Edit**.
3. In the *Edit Managed FortiSwitch* panel, the *Firmware* section displays the current build on the FortiSwitch.

**To upgrade the firmware on multiple FortiSwitch units at the same time:**

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Select the faceplates of the FortiSwitch units that you want to upgrade.
3. Click *Upgrade*. The *Upgrade FortiSwitches* page opens.
4. Select *FortiGuard* or select *Upload* and then select the firmware file to upload. If you select *FortiGuard*, all FortiSwitch units that can be upgraded are upgraded. If you select *Upload*, only one firmware image can be used at a time for upgrading.
5. Select *Upgrade*.

### Using the FortiGate CLI

Use the following command to stage a firmware image on all FortiSwitch units:

```
execute switch-controller switch-software stage all <image id>
```

Use the following command to upgrade the firmware image on one FortiSwitch unit:

```
execute switch-controller switch-software upgrade <switch id> <image id>
```

Use the following CLI commands to enable the use of HTTPS to download firmware to managed FortiSwitch units:

```
config switch-controller global
  set https-image-push enable
end
```

**NOTE:** The HTTPS download is enabled by default.

From your FortiGate CLI, you can upgrade the firmware of all of the managed FortiSwitch units of the same model using a single `execute` command. The command includes the name of a firmware image file and all of the managed FortiSwitch units compatible with that firmware image file are upgraded. For example:

```
execute switch-controller switch-software stage all <firmware-image-file>
```

You can also use the following command to restart all of the managed FortiSwitch units after a 2-minute delay.

```
execute switch-controller switch-action restart delay all
```

## Canceling pending or downloading FortiSwitch upgrades

A FortiSwitch device in FortiLink mode can be upgrade using the FortiGate device.

If a connectivity issue occurs during the upgrade process and the FortiSwitch unit loses contact with the FortiGate device, the FortiSwitch upgrade status can get stuck at `Upgrading`. Use the following CLI command to cancel the process:

```
execute switch-controller switch-software cancel {all | sn <FortiSwitch_serial_number> |  
switch-group <switch_group ID>}
```

all	Cancel the firmware upgrade for all FortiSwitch units.
sn <FortiSwitch_serial_number>	Cancel the firmware upgrade for the FortiSwitch unit with the specified serial number.
switch-group <switch_group ID>	Cancel the firmware upgrade for the FortiSwitch units belonging to the specified switch group.

For example, to cancel the upgrade of a FortiSwitch unit with the specified serial number:

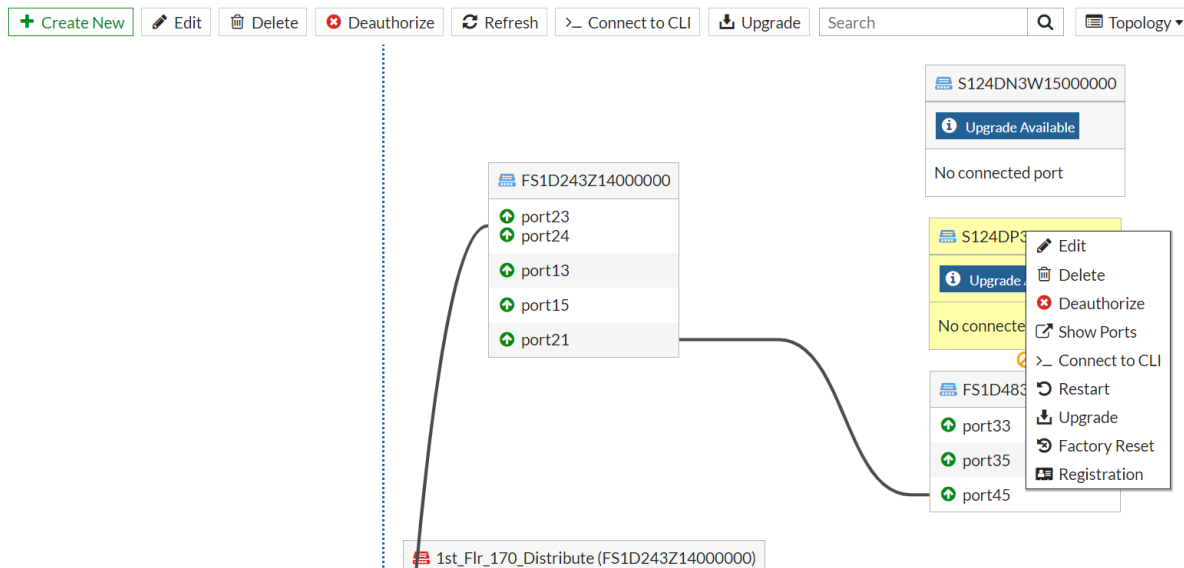
```
execute switch-controller switch-software cancel sn S248EPTF180018XX
```

## Registering FortiSwitch to FortiCloud

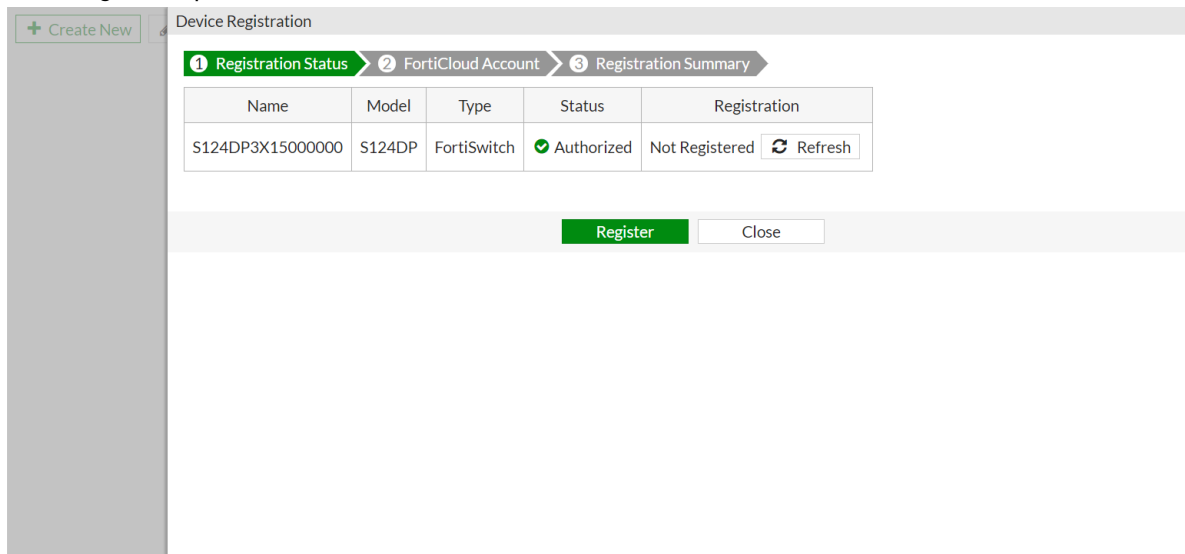
After authorizing a FortiSwitch, administrators can register the FortiSwitch to FortiCloud directly from the FortiOS GUI.

### To register the FortiSwitch in the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch* and ensure the *Topology* view is selected.
2. In the topology, right-click on an unregistered device and click *Registration*.



3. Complete the device registration wizard:
  - a. Click *Register* to proceed.



- b. Enter the FortiCloud account information and click *Submit*.

Device Registration

✓ Registration Status > 2 FortiCloud Account > 3 Registration Summary

Email:

Password:

[Forgot your password?](#)

Country/Region:

Reseller:

The registration information is submitted to FortiCare, and FortiOS attempts to collect the registration status from FortiGuard. Since FortiGuard and FortiCare synchronize periodically, the registration status may not update immediately (it may take up to a few hours).

Device Registration

✓ Registration Status > ✓ FortiCloud Account > 3 Registration Summary

Name	Model	Type	Status	Registration
S124DP3X15000000	S124DP	FortiSwitch	✓ Authorized	✓ Registration submitted, but information may need a moment to update. Please try again later. <input type="button" value="Refresh"/>

- c. Click *Close*.

4. After a while, go back to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
5. Right-click on the device and click *Registration*. The device is shown as *Registered* to the corresponding *FortiCloud* account.

+ Create New

Device Registration

Name	Model	Type	Status	Registration	FortiCloud Account
S124DP3X15000000	S124DP	FortiSwitch	✓ Authorized	✓ Registered	xxxx@fortinet.com

Close

### To register the FortiSwitch in the CLI:

```
# diagnose forticare direct-registration product-registration -N S124DP3X15000000 -a
xxxx@fortinet.com -p LDAP -T "CA" -R "other" -e 1
```

Account info:

```
contract_number=[] account_id=[xxxx@fortinet.com] password=[***]
reseller_id=0 reseller=[other]
first_name=[] last_name=[] company=[]
title=[] address=[] city=[]
state=[] state_code=[] country_code=0
post_code=[] phone=[] fax=[]
industry=[] industry_id=0 orgsize=[] orgsize_id=0
version=0 SN=[S124DP3X15000000] existing=1
```

Prepare to register product into this account.

Do you want to continue? (y/n)y

Registration successful

## Replacing a managed FortiSwitch unit

If a managed FortiSwitch unit fails, you can replace it with another FortiSwitch unit that is managed by the same FortiGate unit. The replacement FortiSwitch unit will inherit the configuration of the FortiSwitch unit that it replaces. The failed FortiSwitch unit is no longer managed by a FortiGate unit or discovered by FortiLink.

### NOTE:

- Both FortiSwitch units must be of the same model.
- The replacement FortiSwitch unit must be discovered by FortiLink but not authorized.
- If the replacement FortiSwitch unit is one of an MLAG pair, you need to manually reconfigure the MLAG-ICL trunk.
- After replacing the failed FortiSwitch unit, the automatically created trunk name does not change. If you want different trunk name, you need to delete the trunk. The new trunk is created automatically with an updated name. At the end of this section is a detailed procedure for renaming the MLAG-ICL trunk.

- If the replaced managed FortiSwitch unit is part of an MCLAG, only the ICL should be connected to the new switch to avoid any traffic loops. The other interfaces should be connected only to the switch that is fully managed the FortiGate unit with the correct configuration.
- The best way to replace a MCLAG FortiSwitch unit in FortiLink:
  - a. Back up the configuration of the failed FortiSwitch unit.
  - b. Restore the configuration to the replaced Fortiswitch unit while it is offline.
  - c. Enter the `replace-device` command in FortiOS.
  - d. Physically replace the failed FortiSwitch unit.

### To replace a managed FortiSwitch unit:

1. Unplug the failed FortiSwitch unit.
2. Plug in the replacement FortiSwitch unit.
3. Upgrade the firmware of the replacement FortiSwitch unit to the same version as the firmware on the failed FortiSwitch unit. See [Viewing and upgrading the FortiSwitch firmware version on page 202](#).
4. Reset the replacement FortiSwitch unit to factory default settings with the `execute factoryreset` command.
5. Check the serial number of the replacement FortiSwitch unit.
6. From the FortiGate unit, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch*.
7. Select the faceplate of the failed FortiSwitch unit.
8. Select *Deauthorize*.
9. Connect the replacement FortiSwitch unit to the FortiGate unit that was managing the failed FortiSwitch unit.
 

**NOTE:** If the replaced managed FortiSwitch unit is part of an MCLAG, only the ICL should be connected to the new switch to avoid any traffic loops. The other interfaces should be connected only to the switch that is fully managed the FortiGate unit with the correct configuration.
10. If the failed FortiSwitch unit was part of a VDOM, enter the following commands:

```
config vdom
  edit <VDOM_name>
    execute replace-device fortiswitch <failed_FortiSwitch_serial_number> <replacement_
      FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

For example:

```
config vdom
  edit vdom_new
    execute replace-device fortiswitch S124DN3W16002025 S124DN3W16002026
```

If the failed FortiSwitch unit was not part of a VDOM, enter the following command:

```
execute replace-device fortiswitch <failed_FortiSwitch_serial_number> <replacement_
  FortiSwitch_serial_number>
```

An error is returned if the replacement FortiSwitch unit is authorized.

11. Authorize the replaced managed FortiSwitch unit.
12. Connect the rest of the cables required for the uplinks and downlinks for the MCLAG FortiSwitch units.

### To rename the MCLAG-ICL trunk:

After replacing the failed FortiSwitch unit, the automatically created trunk name does not change. If you want different trunk name, you need to delete the trunk. The new trunk is created automatically with an updated name.

Changing the name of the MCLAG-ICL trunk must be done on both the FortiGate unit and the MCLAG-ICL switches. You need a maintenance window for the change.

**1. Shut down the FortiLink interface on the FortiGate unit.**

- a. On the FortiGate unit, execute the `show system interface` command. For example:**

```
FG3K2D3Z17800156 # show system interface root-lag
config system interface
edit "root-lag"
set vdom "root"
set fortilink enable
set ip 10.105.60.254 255.255.255.0
set allowaccess ping capwap
set type aggregate
set member "port45" "port48"
config managed-device
```

- b. Write down the member port information. In this example, port45 and port48 are the member ports.**

- c. Shut down the member ports with the `config system interface, edit <member-port>, set status down, and end` commands. For example:**

```
FG3K2D3Z17800156 # config system interface
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (interface) # edit port48
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (port48) # set status down
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (port48) # next // repeat for each member port
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (interface) # edit port45
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (port45) # set status down
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (port45) # end
```

- d. Verify that FortiLink is down with the `exec switch-controller get-conn-status` command. For example:**

```
FG3K2D3Z17800156 # exec switch-controller get-conn-status
Managed-devices in current vdom root:
STACK-NAME: FortiSwitch-Stack-root-lag
SWITCH-ID VERSION STATUS ADDRESS JOIN-TIME NAME
FS1D483Z17000282 v6.0.0 Authorized/Down 0.0.0.0 N/A icl-sw2
FS1D483Z17000348 v6.0.0 Authorized/Down 0.0.0.0 N/A icl-sw1
```

**2. Rename the MCLAG-ICL trunk name on both MCLAG-ICL switches.**

- a. Execute the `show switch trunk` command on both MCLAG-ICL switches. Locate the ICL trunk that includes the `set mclag-icl enable` command in its configuration and write down the member ports and configuration information. For example:**

```
icl-sw1 # show switch trunk
config switch trunk
...
edit "D483Z17000282-0"
set mode lacp-active
set auto-isl 1
set mclag-icl enable // look for this line
set members "port27" "port28" // note the member ports
next
end
```



- b. Note the output of the** `show switch interface <MCLAG-ICL-trunk-name>`, `diagnose switch mclag icl`, and `diagnose switch trunk summary <MCLAG-ICL-trunk-name>` **commands. For example:**

```
icl-sw1 # show switch interface D483Z17000282-0
config switch interface
edit "D483Z17000282-0"
set native-vlan 4094
set allowed-vlans 1,100,2001-2060,4093
set dhcp-snooping trusted
set stp-state disabled
set edge-port disabled
set igmp-snooping-flood-reports enable
set mcast-snooping-flood-traffic enable
set snmp-index 57
next
end
```

```
icl-sw1 # diag switch mclag icl
D483Z17000282-0
icl-ports 27-28
egress-block-ports 3-4,7-12,47-48
interface-mac 70:4c:a5:86:6d:e5
lACP-serial-number FS1D483Z17000348
peer-mac 70:4c:a5:49:50:53
peer-serial-number FS1D483Z17000282
Local uptime 0 days 1h:49m:24s
Peer uptime 0 days 1h:49m:17s
MCLAG-STP-mac 70:4c:a5:49:50:52
keepalive interval 1
keepalive timeout 60
```

```
Counters
received keepalive packets 4852
transmitted keepalive packets 5293
received keepalive drop packets 20
receive keepalive miss 1
```

```
icl-sw1 # diagnose switch trunk sum D483Z17000282-0
Trunk Name Mode PSC MAC Status Up Time
```

---

```
D483Z17000282-0 lacp-active(auto-isl,mclag-icl) src-dst-ip 70:4C:A5:86:6E:00 up
(2/2) 0 days,0 hours,16 mins,4 secs
```

- c. Shut down the ICL member ports using the** `config switch physical-port`, `edit <member port>`, `set status down`, `next`, and `end` **commands. For example:**

```
icl-sw1 # config switch physical-port
icl-sw1 (physical-port) # edit port27
icl-sw1 (port27) # set status down
icl-sw1 (port27) # n // repeat for each ICL member port
icl-sw1 (physical-port) # edit port28
icl-sw1 (port28) # set status down
```

```
icl-sw1 (port28) # next
icl-sw1 (physical-port) # end
```

- d. Delete the original MLAG-ICL trunk name on the switch using the `config switch trunk, delete <mclag-icl-trunk-name>, and end` commands. For example:

```
icl-sw1 # config switch trunk
icl-sw1 (trunk) # delete D483Z17000282-0
```

- e. Use the `show switch trunk` command to verify that the trunk is deleted.
- f. Create a new trunk for the MLAG ICL using the original ICL trunk configuration collected in step 2b and the `set auto-is1 0` command in the configuration. For example:

```
icl-sw1 # config switch trunk

icl-sw1 (trunk) # edit MLAG-ICL
new entry 'MLAG-ICL' added
icl-sw1 (MLAG-ICL) #set mode lacp-active
icl-sw1 (MLAG-ICL) #set members "port27" "port28"
icl-sw1 (MLAG-ICL) #set mclag-icl enable
icl-sw1 (MLAG-ICL) # end
```

- g. Use the `show switch trunk` command to check the trunk configuration.
- h. Start the trunk member ports by using the `config switch physical-port, edit <member port>, set status up, next, and end` commands. For example:

```
icl-sw1 # config switch physical-port
icl-sw1 (physical-port) # edit port27
icl-sw1 (port27) # set status up
icl-sw1 (port27) # next // repeat for each trunk member port
icl-sw1 (physical-port) # edit port28
icl-sw1 (port28) # set status up
icl-sw1 (port28) # end
```

**NOTE:** Follow steps 2a through 2h on both switches.

3. Set up the FortiLink interface on the FortiGate unit. Enter the `config system interface, edit <interface-member-port>, set status up, next, and end` commands. For example:

```
FG3K2D3Z17800156 # config system interface
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (interface) # edit port45
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (port45) # set status up
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (port45) # next // repeat on all member ports
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (interface) # edit port48
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (port48) # set status up
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (port48) # next
FG3K2D3Z17800156 (interface) # end
```

4. Check the configuration and status on both MLAG-ICL switches
- a. Enter the `show switch trunk, diagnose switch mclag icl, and diagnose switch trunk summary <new-trunk-name>` commands. For example:
- ```
icl-sw1 # show switch trunk
config switch trunk
```

```

<snip>
edit "MCLAG-ICL"
set mode lacp-active
set mclag-icl enable
set members "port27" "port28"
next
end

icl-sw1 # show switch interface MCLAG-ICL
config switch interface
edit "MCLAG-ICL"
set native-vlan 4094
set allowed-vlans 1,100,2001-2060,4093
set dhcp-snooping trusted
set stp-state disabled
set igmp-snooping-flood-reports enable
set mcast-snooping-flood-traffic enable
set snmp-index 56
next
end

icl-sw1 # diagnose switch mclag icl
MCLAG-ICL
icl-ports 27-28
egress-block-ports 3-4,7-12,47-48
interface-mac 70:4c:a5:86:6d:e5
lacp-serial-number FS1D483Z17000348
peer-mac 70:4c:a5:49:50:5
peer-serial-number FS1D483Z17000282
Local uptime 0 days 2h:11m:13s
Peer uptime 0 days 2h:11m: 7s
MCLAG-STP-mac 70:4c:a5:49:50:52
keepalive interval 1
keepalive timeout 60

Counters
received keepalive packets 5838
transmitted keepalive packets 6279
received keepalive drop packets 27
receive keepalive miss 1

icl-sw1 # diagnose switch trunk summary MCLAG-ICL

Trunk Name Mode PSC MAC Status Up Time
-----
MCLAG-ICL lacp-active(auto-isl,mclag-icl) src-dst-ip 70:4C:A5:86:6E:00 up(2/2)
0 days,1 hours,4 mins,57 secs

```

- b.** Compare the command results in step 4a with the command results in step 2b.

## Executing custom FortiSwitch scripts

From the FortiGate unit, you can execute a custom script on a managed FortiSwitch unit. The custom script contains generic FortiSwitch commands.

**NOTE:** FortiOS 5.6.0 introduces additional capabilities related to the managed FortiSwitch unit.

This section covers the following topics:

- [Creating a custom script on page 212](#)
- [Executing a custom script once on page 212](#)
- [Binding a custom script to a managed switch on page 212](#)

### Creating a custom script

Use the following syntax to create a custom script from the FortiGate unit:

```
config switch-controller custom-command
  edit <cmd-name>
    set command "<FortiSwitch_command>"
  end
```

**NOTE:** You need to use %0a to indicate a return.

For example, use the custom script to set the STP max-age parameter on a managed FortiSwitch unit:

```
config switch-controller custom-command
  edit "stp-age-10"
    set command "config switch stp setting %0a set max-age 10 %0a end %0a"
  end
```

### Executing a custom script once

After you have created a custom script, you can manually execute it on any managed FortiSwitch unit. Because the custom script is not bound to any switch, the FortiSwitch unit might reset some parameters when it is restarted.

Use the following syntax on the FortiGate unit to execute the custom script once on a specified managed FortiSwitch unit:

```
execute switch-controller custom-command <cmd-name> <target-switch>
```

For example, you can execute the stp-age-10 script on the specified managed FortiSwitch unit:

```
execute switch-controller custom-command stp-age-10 S124DP3X15000118
```

### Binding a custom script to a managed switch

If you want the custom script to be part of the managed switch's configuration, the custom script must be bound to the managed switch. If any of the commands in the custom script are locally controlled by a switch, the commands might be overwritten locally.

Use the following syntax to bind a custom script to a managed switch:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit "<FortiSwitch_serial_number>"
    config custom-command
      edit <custom_script_entry>
        set command-name "<name_of_custom_script>"
      next
    end
  next
end
```

For example:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit "S524DF4K15000024"
    config custom-command
      edit 1
        set command-name "stp-age-10"
      next
    end
  next
end
```

## Resetting PoE-enabled ports

If you need to reset PoE-enabled ports, go to *WiFi & Switch Control > FortiSwitch Ports*, right-click on one or more PoE-enabled ports and select *Reset PoE* from the context menu.

You can also go to *WiFi & Switch Control > Managed FortiSwitch* and click on a port icon for the FortiSwitch of interest. In the FortiSwitch Ports page, right-click on one or more PoE-enabled ports and select *Reset PoE* from the context menu.



[www.fortinet.com](http://www.fortinet.com)

Copyright© 2023 Fortinet, Inc. All rights reserved. Fortinet®, FortiGate®, FortiCare® and FortiGuard®, and certain other marks are registered trademarks of Fortinet, Inc., and other Fortinet names herein may also be registered and/or common law trademarks of Fortinet. All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Performance and other metrics contained herein were attained in internal lab tests under ideal conditions, and actual performance and other results may vary. Network variables, different network environments and other conditions may affect performance results. Nothing herein represents any binding commitment by Fortinet, and Fortinet disclaims all warranties, whether express or implied, except to the extent Fortinet enters a binding written contract, signed by Fortinet's General Counsel, with a purchaser that expressly warrants that the identified product will perform according to certain expressly-identified performance metrics and, in such event, only the specific performance metrics expressly identified in such binding written contract shall be binding on Fortinet. For absolute clarity, any such warranty will be limited to performance in the same ideal conditions as in Fortinet's internal lab tests. Fortinet disclaims in full any covenants, representations, and guarantees pursuant hereto, whether express or implied. Fortinet reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice, and the most current version of the publication shall be applicable.